

## SECTION G: FORMULATION OF STRATEGIES AND IDENTIFICATION OF PROJECTS

**SECTION SYNOPSIS AND USER'S MANUAL**

This section comprises the following:

- a) A synopsis of the key issues that emerged from the planning process, the various IDPs (ODM and Category B Municipalities), and the maps and data base provided by *inter alia* STEP, SKEP and CAPE. These key issues were categorised in order to facilitate coherent planning. Diagram 14 illustrates the various key categories.
- b) Tables that describe the following in respect of each key issue:
  - (i) Objectives.
  - (ii) Strategies and projects in respect of each key issue. (*Distinction is made between strategies that have spatial implications {Group 1 Strategies} and strategies with no spatial implications {Group 2 Strategies}*).
  - (iii) Institution responsible for implementation.
- c) An 'inventory' chapter that illustrates how the key issues raised in the Overberg IDP (also the IDPs of the various Category B Municipalities) have been addressed in this document. A primary advantage of these 'inventory' chapters is that they serve as a direct link between the IDPs and this document, enabling constant updating of this document, and serving as a basis for prioritisation of actions on a district level.

This section should be read together with the preceding sections, especially Sections D to F, which put forward fundamentally important implementation strategies.

### 23 INTRODUCTION

#### 23.1 KEY ISSUES AND KEY CATEGORIES

As stated above, the key issues that emerged from the planning process, the various IDPs (ODM and Category B Municipalities), and the maps and data base provided by *inter alia* STEP, SKEP and CAPE. These key issues were categorised into five key categories in order to facilitate coherent planning. Diagram 14 below illustrates the various key categories.

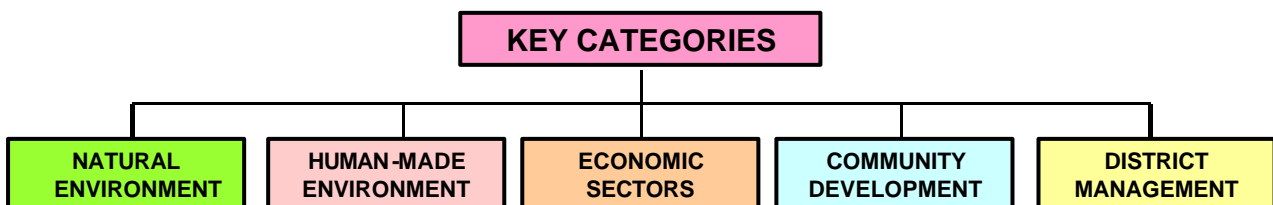


Diagram 14: Key categories addressed in this section.

### 23.1.1 KEY ASPECTS THAT EMERGED FROM THE IDP PROCESS

The 22 key aspects that emerged from the Overberg IDP process are listed in Table 30 below. The table also indicates in which chapter the various aspects have been addressed and what strategies have been proposed for each aspect. It is important to note that some of these aspects have not been addressed in specific terms, but that broad guidelines have been provided that address those aspects together with other similar aspects or categories.

**Table 30: Key aspects that emerged from the IDP process.**

NO	ASPECT	RELEVANT CHAPTER & STRATEGIES
1	Provision of water	Chapter 24.4, Strategy 24.4-02 and 24.2-20 to 24.4-24
2	Provision of houses to informal settlements	Chapter 25.3, Strategy 25.3-05
3	Provision and proper maintenance of roads	Chapter 25.2, Strategy 25.2-01; Chapter 25.3, Strategy 25.3-18 and 25.3-19
4	Airports and air-fields	Chapter 25.3, Strategy 21.3-20
5	Upgrading of harbours and boat slipways	Chapter 26.4, Strategy 26.4-01 and 26.4-02
6	Fire Fighting & Disaster Management	Chapter 28.2, Strategy 28.2-11
7	Integrated transport plan	Chapter 27.1, Strategy 27.1-08
8	Integrated waste management plan	Chapter 25.3, Strategy 25.3-23 and 25.3-24
9	Refuse recycling	Chapter 25.3, Strategy 25.3-25
10	Electricity supply	Chapter 25.3, Strategy 25.3-26 and 25.3-27
11	Provision of regional crematorium	Chapter 25.3, Strategy 25.3-07
12	Strategy for regional development & inter-sector co-operation	Chapter 28.1, Strategy 28.1-01 to 28.1-05
13	Community health programme	Chapter 27.1, Strategy 27.1-08, 27.1-12 and 27.1-14
14	Human development strategy	Chapter 26.1, Strategy 26.1-11 to 26.1-15 Chapter 27.1, Strategy 27.1-01 and 27.1-14
15	Promotion of environmental health	Chapter 27.1, Strategy 27.1-12 and 27.1-32
16	Sustainable environmental management	Chapter 24.1, Strategy 24.1-15 to 24.1-18 Chapter 27.1, Strategy 27.1-16 and 27.1-21
17	Control of alien vegetation	Chapter 24.3, Strategy 24.3-05 and 24.3-06 Chapter 24.5, Strategy 24.5-08
18	Effective environmental law enforcement	Chapter 24.1, Strategy; 24.1-05 Chapter 24.6, Strategy 24.6-13 Chapter 26.2, Strategy 26.2-13 Chapter 26.4, Strategy 26.4-06
19	Environmental rehabilitation	Chapter 24.3, Strategy 24.3-04 and 24.3-12 Chapter 25.3, Strategy 25.3-16 Chapter 27.1, Strategy 27.1-25
20	Compilation of Regional Economic Development Framework	Chapter 27.1, Strategy 27.1-16
21	Training & empowerment to promote economic & human development	Chapter 27.1, Strategy 27.1-02, 27.1-03 and 27.1-14
22	Crime prevention & rural protection	Chapter 27.1, Strategy 27.1-10 and 27.1-11

## 23.2 TYPE OF STRATEGIES AND PROJECTS

Although an SDF, per definition, essentially addresses the **spatial** implication of the IDP, it is recognised that holistic governance and management of any area (as is contemplated for the ODM) will also require the implementation of strategies that will not have any spatial implications. Subsequently, the key issues and proposed strategies and projects addressed in this section were divided into two distinct groups, namely:

**a) Group 1: Issues / strategies with Spatial Implications**

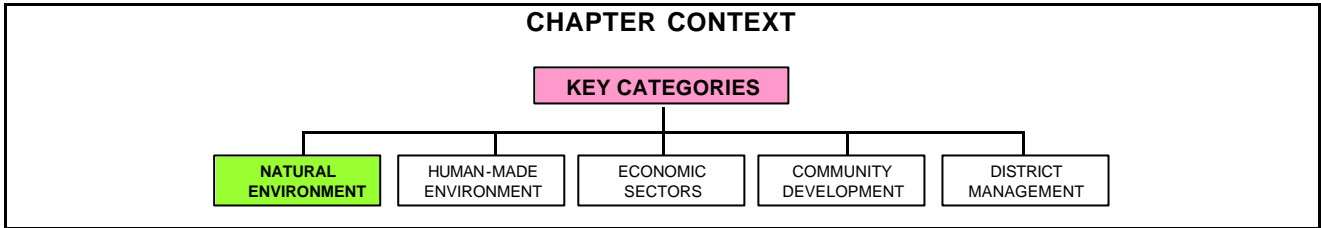
(Most of the Group 1 strategies were translated into GIS mapping, producing sectoral plans).

**b) Group 2: Issues with No Spatial Implications**

(Although the Group 2 issues will not have any spatial implications, they could have an impact on sustainable development and were, therefore, addressed in this section).

The inclusion of Group 2 strategies implies that the SDF could also serve as a **management framework** for the ODM.

**24 KEY CATEGORY: NATURAL ENVIRONMENT**



The structure of the chapters covering this key category is illustrated by Diagram 15 below.

NATURAL ENVIRONMENT	
<b>Chapter 24.1:</b>	Protected nature areas and conservation-worthy natural areas
<b>Chapter 24.2:</b>	Natural Resources
	a) Rocks, soils and minerals
	b) Water
	c) Flora
	d) Fauna

**Diagram 15: Structure of the chapters pertaining to the natural environment.**

The recommendations for the natural environment is largely based on the scientific information provided by CAPE and SKEP and by other relevant research reports, as well as by the WCNCB and SANParks.

**24.1 PROTECTED NATURE AREAS AND CONSERVATION-WORTHY NATURAL AREAS**

As stated above, the ODM comprises a number of protected nature areas that represent SPC.A (Core) areas. There is, however a serious concern on the part of *inter alia* CAPE, SKEP and STEP that the existing conservation areas do not adequately cover those areas that are of real conservation importance (refer to the CAPE and SKEP maps), hence the proposal that a system of protected nature areas to be established, which includes significant portion of privately-owned land.

The main functions and values of natural areas are to:

- a) Maintain representative and viable samples of the full range of natural ecosystems and biodiversity - the natural heritage of all people and of future generations;
- b) Maintain life-support systems that provide the communities of the Overberg District Municipal Area with ecosystem services;
- c) Provide essential insurance (buffers) against inevitable mistakes in land management and resource utilisation;
- d) Provide opportunities for contact with nature ('maintaining a link with the land'), and associated opportunities for outdoor recreation and environmental education; and
- e) Provide a 'sense of place' to all people (state owned conservation areas are virtually the only parts of the country that all South Africans can call their own).

The ODM comprises a number of globally important habitats and habitat units, including Fynbos and Renosterveld, representative examples of which have been included in statutory conservation areas. Furthermore, the establishment of the proposed system of protected nature areas will ensure the protection of other priority conservation areas.

In addition to the above, the ODM is renowned for a number of estuaries, lagoons, lakes and river mouths that are of immense conservation importance. These systems form the junction, or interface, between land and sea, and are sensitive to disturbance and interference. River mouths and estuaries play important roles as the water and sediments from the land are funnelled through them into the sea. Estuaries provide for gradual changes to take place as the physical, chemical and biological characteristics of the water changes as it moves from fresh water to seawater. One of the most important functions of estuaries is that they provide a *sheltered food-rich haven* for fish, which frequent estuaries during spawning and juvenile periods. The *Cape Action for People and the Environment* report (2000) states that of all the fish species endemic to Southern Africa, 70% use estuaries within the Cape Floral Kingdom either for breeding or feeding. Of these fishes, a large proportion is exploited either commercially or recreationally, and populations of many of these species are currently declining due to overexploitation. The interaction between terrestrial and marine components result in complex systems giving rise to a range of habitats supporting high biodiversity. Estuaries within the ODM also form important feeding grounds for vast numbers of migratory birds. The capacity to sustain rich plant and animal life is a result of their function as nutrient traps, gaining nutrients from both rivers and the sea. Estuaries and lagoons are not only important ecological systems, but are also aesthetic resources. This results in increasing pressure for development on the banks of estuaries, lagoons and lakes, and also in the vicinity of the connection zone between the sea and estuaries and lagoons.

In order to achieve integrated management of conservation-worthy areas throughout the ODM it is imperative that close collaboration be established between the ODM, the relevant local municipalities, STEP, SKEP, CAPE, SANParks and WCNCB. For example, it is of fundamental importance that initiatives such as the *Agulhas Biodiversity Initiative (ABI)* initiated by the SANParks be undertaken on a partnership basis under the auspices of the ODM and the relevant local municipalities, and as part of the statutory IDP process.

#### **24.1.1 VISION FOR PROTECTED NATURE AREAS AND CONSERVATION-WORTHY NATURAL AREAS**

##### **VISION**

Protected nature areas and conservation-worthy natural areas are to be consolidated into one continuous tract of conservation land protecting natural biodiversity and providing community supporting ecosystem services.

#### **24.1.2 GROUP 1 STRATEGIES FOR PROTECTED NATURE AREAS**

The strategies, programmes, projects and action plans that will have spatial implications are summarised in Table 31 on the following page.

**Table 31: Strategies with spatial implications for nature areas.**

KEY ISSUE: INCREASE AND CONSOLIDATE PROTECTED NATURAL AREAS		
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Extend statutory conservation status to at least 12% of the ODM.
STRATEGY	PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION	
24.1-01	Establish protected nature areas in conservation worthy habitats.	<p>Register additional statutory private and local authority nature reserves.</p> <p>Establish a network of protected nature areas throughout the ODM (<b>refer to Plan 4</b>).</p> <p>Register a RAMSAR site in the estuary of the Breede River (<b>Plan 2 &amp; Plan 4</b>).</p> <p>Support the initiative to establish the Boland Biosphere Reserve (<b>Refer to Plan 3</b>).</p> <p>Explore the viability of other biosphere reserves in the ODM as indicated by <b>Plan 3</b>.</p>
24.1-02	Consolidate statutory and <i>de facto</i> nature areas to form extensive continuous tracts of conservation land.	<p>WCNCB and SANParks must negotiate with relevant owners.</p> <p>Owners must rezone properties to Open Space III.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the WCNCB and SANParks.</p> <p>WCNCB must apply for registration of RAMSAR sites in collaboration with DEAT.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the PGWC in collaboration with affected district and local municipalities.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the WCNCB and SANParks.</p>
24.1-03	Link important statutory conservation areas.	<p>WCNCB must facilitate establishment of conservancies.</p> <p>Catchment Management Authority (CMA) must facilitate appropriate management of MCAs in accordance with Mountain Catchment Areas Act, 1970 (Act 63 of 1970).</p>
24.1-04	Establish conservancies on suitable privately-owned land.	<p>WCNCB must facilitate establishment of conservancies (linkages) on suitable privately-owned land.</p> <p>WCNCB must negotiate with relevant land-owners.</p> <p>WCNCB must establish conservancy committees and facilitate management of conservancies.</p>
24.1-04	Establish conservancies on suitable privately-owned land.	<p>Establish conservancies to include all conservation-worthy areas and ecological corridors (<b>Plan 2 and Plan 4</b>).</p>

### 24.1.3 GROUP 2 STRATEGIES FOR NATURE AREAS

Table 32 below summarises the recommended strategies in respect of the nature areas (SPC A.b, B.a, B.b and B.c) in the ODM.

**Table 32: Strategies with no spatial implications for nature areas.**

<b>KEY ISSUE: MANAGEMENT OF PROTECTED NATURE AREAS</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Conserve the ecological and social integrity of natural areas and provide a broad spectrum of compatible outdoor recreational opportunities.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.1-05	Improve efficiency of conservation authorities and state departments.	Institute effective work-study programmes to determine efficiency of departments.  Facilitate and ensure effective environmental law enforcement. <b>(Refer to Strategy E3, Overberg IDP)</b>  Finalise and implement the Strategic Environmental Assessment for the ODM.	To be instituted by all the relevant state departments functioning in the district municipal area.  “  To be facilitated by the ODM.
24.1-06	Rationalise departmental functions.	Undertake studies to determine functions that could be rationalised or privatised.	To be instituted by all the relevant state departments functioning in the region.
24.1-07	Centralise the management of all statutory conservation areas.	Establish appropriate collaboration between the WCNCB and SANParks.	To be facilitated by the National Government in collaboration with WCNCB & SANParks.
24.1-08	Determine and regulate carrying capacity in accordance with ecological requirements.	Institute integrated research programmes and base line studies.  Institute compulsory scheduled monitoring and environmental auditing.	WCNCB and SANParks to collaborate with research departments of universities.  WCNCB, SANParks and the ODM to ensure that development and land-use are undertaken in accordance with ISO 14001 standards and procedures.
24.1-09	Restore degraded sites or conservation areas.	Consolidate conservation areas, demolish and remove unnecessary and unsightly buildings and infrastructure and rehabilitate sites, remove all alien vegetation. <b>(Refer to Strategy E5, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be instituted by WCNCB, SANParks, ODM, Category B Municipalities, owners of private conservation areas and farmers.

24.1-10	Institute plans and programmes for managing statutory conservation areas.	Draft and implement a Spatial Development Plan for the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve which incorporates and builds on the bioregional planning principles promoted by this SDF.  Draft and implement an appropriate <i>Environmental Management Plan</i> for the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve.	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with the PGWC, local municipalities and other parties involved.  To be undertaken by the local municipality in collaboration with the ODM.
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.1-10	Institute plans and programmes for managing statutory conservation areas.	Draft and implement conservation policies for all towns and settlements, which identify urban edges, sensitive environments, etc. that will be sustainable in the long-term.	ODM, owners of private conservation areas, communities and various environmental societies, e.g. Institute for Plant Conservation, Flora Conservation Committee, etc.

**KEY ISSUE: PUBLIC INVOLVEMENT**

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Ensure constructive public involvement in environmental conservation.

<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.1-11	Foster public acceptance of ownership and responsibility for specific conservation areas.	Institute integrated environmental education.  Establish a MaB (Man and the Biosphere) centre in the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve and in any future biosphere reserves in the district.	WCNCB, SANParks, the ODM and owners of private conservation areas must present regular environmental workshops at all levels of society.
24.1-12	Collect public funds for management of specific conservation areas.	Develop and institute co-ordinated public fund-raising programmes.	NGOs and public forums such as 'friends groups' or 'interest groups' must facilitate fund-raising.
24.1-13	Ensure educated public interest and involvement in nature conservation.	Institute educational programmes to establish public interest and involvement in nature conservation.  Integrated environmental education to establish a stronger sense of shared responsibility for the environs.	Western Cape Education Department (WCED) must include environmental education in school curricula.  WCNCB and SANParks must facilitate environmental education in collaboration with state departments and the ODM.
24.1-14	Establish public interest and involvement in the management of conservation areas. <b>(Refer to Strategy E3.1, Overberg IDP)</b>	Institute compulsory multi-disciplinary advisory committees (with public representation) for all conservation areas.  Institute field excursions and open days to stimulate interest and financial support for specific conservation projects.	WCNCB, SANParks, the ODM and owners of private conservation areas must establish conservation forums.  WCNCB, SANParks, the ODM and owners of private conservation areas.



<b>KEY ISSUE: PROTECTION OF ESTUARIES, LAKES, NATURAL WATER BODIES</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure long-term protection of estuaries, lakes, natural water bodies.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.1-15	Ensure effective management and conservation of catchments.	Prepare and implement management plans for all catchments.  Eradicate alien plant infestations.  Regulate construction of dams, levees, and other obstructions.	To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB, SANParks and ODM.  “  To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB, SANParks and ODM.
24.1-16	Protect all estuaries and river mouths.	Institute management plans for all estuaries which include measures to improve or at least maintain the current state of the estuary (including improved pollution control, periodic flood releases to flush siltation, etc.).	To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB, SANParks and ODM.
24.1-17	Protect estuaries and river mouths from developmental impact.	Regulate all development in accordance with Plan 2 and strictly apply the value system (refer to Chapter 18) in decision-making.	To be facilitated by the ODM.
24.1-18	Improvement of the current knowledge base.	Undertake and sustain research particularly with regard to the distribution and occurrence of species within estuaries, and biological processes such as fish reproduction and migration.	To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB, SANParks, ODM with assistance from CAPE, STEP.

#### 24.1.4 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 33 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to nature areas. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 33: Nature Areas: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

<b>REPORT 1: OVERBERG INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (ODM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: INCREASE AND CONSOLIDATE PROTECTED NATURAL AREAS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.1	The conservation situation in the lowlands of the ODM (Rûensveld inland and Strandveld along the coast) is so critical that all remaining natural habitats and vegetation should be regarded as sensitive. Continued agricultural extensions are threatening the original Renosterveld of the coastal area, of which only $\pm 5\%$ remains. Important threats to the ecosystems of the Strandveld are alien vegetation in the form of Rooikrans and Port Jackson and uncontrolled and unsustainable development of coastal resorts.  <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-01 to 24.1-04, 25.2-07 and 25.2-08)</b>

<b>ISSUE: MANAGEMENT OF PROTECTED NATURE AREAS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.2	Disorderly conservation attempts, a lack of co-operation and co-ordination between the various conservation bodies and shortages in manpower and funding are making conservation extremely difficult throughout the ODM. The division of areas of jurisdiction and functions between state authorities are further hindering conservation efforts and contribute to confusion. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-05 to 24.1-07)</b>
1.3	Through a balanced approach, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve can become the example of sensible reconciliation between development and conservation to the satisfaction and benefit of an entire community. This will imply that all the communities should participate, have a share in the management and utilisation of the reserve and benefit from it. If this does not receive timely attention, it will eventually contribute to: a) Total environmental decline b) An area that is unattractive to tourists c) Unsustainable development that put pressure on natural resources <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-10)</b>
1.4	The execution of a complete strategic environmental assessment (S.E.A.) as first priority and point of departure for any further economic development planning. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-05)</b>
<b>ISSUE: PUBLIC INVOLVEMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.5	Local conservation bodies throughout the ODM do not always involve their entire communities. The formerly disadvantaged communities are often excluded, while it would be almost impossible to convince them of the value and direct and indirect benefits that conservation strategies can hold for them if they are not included and given the opportunity to participate. These groups are also affected by the lack of community education with respect to conservation. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-11 to 24.1-14)</b>
<b>ISSUE: BUFFER ZONE MANAGEMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.6	Promote buffer zones around existing nature reserves and the extension of green corridors to promote biodiversity and protect ecosystems. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-01 to 24.1-04 and 24.1-10)</b>
1.7	The extension of green corridors and buffer zones can further establish the biosphere concept and contribute to economic development. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-01 to 24.1-04 and 24.1-10)</b>
1.8	Biosphere principles should be vested and adhered to on a regional level and the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve should be developed as international and national model of balance that can be struck between conservation and development. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-10)</b>
1.9	Expand the biosphere concept by the creation of green corridors and buffer zones around conservation areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-10)</b>

<b>REPORT 2: THEEWATERSKLOOF IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Theewaterskloof Municipality, 2002)	
<b>ISSUE: GENERAL NATURE CONSERVATION COMMENTS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.1	Enhance and protect the buffer zone of the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, while promoting the biosphere reserve. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-10)</b>
2.2	Provide skills training specially aimed at tourism and conservation - train staff in gardens as tour guides. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-11)</b>
2.3	Promotion and public participation in establishing a clean and pleasant urban and rural environment including the eradication of invasive plant species and the planting of indigenous species. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-09, 24.1-11 to 24.1-14)</b>
2.4	Upgrading of the Caledon Wild Flower Garden and Reserve, including the planting of a wide variety of fynbos species and indigenous herbs for commercial purposes. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-09)</b>
2.5	Establishment of Wild Reserve in Kleinberg. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-01 to 24.1-04)</b>
2.6	Alien vegetation weeding program. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-09, 24.4-11 and 24.5-08)</b>
2.7	Establish fire fighting committee and programme and purchase weeding equipment. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.2-01, 28.2-09 and 28.2-10)</b>
2.8	Establishment of protection and ecological corridors. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-01 to 24.1-04)</b>
2.9	Monitoring programme for both ground and water resources pollution. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-12)</b>
2.10	Landscaping and repairing. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-09)</b>

<b>REPORT 3: OVERSTRAND IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Overstrand Municipality, 2003/2004)	
<b>ISSUE: ENVIRONMENTAL CONSERVATION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.1	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level1: To achieve sound environmental management within the Overstrand area to ensure sustainable conservation of the natural environment, historical and archaeological elements as well as the maintenance of the integrity and character of the urban environment through co-operative management.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level, 2 have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To develop a management infrastructure and staff component.</li> <li>2) To develop co-operate management structures.</li> <li>3) To compile and ecological inventory for the establishment of an ecological database for each area.</li> <li>4) To identify and proclaim Protected Area Networks (PAN's) for each area.</li> <li>5) To compile management plans for each PAN.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-01, 24.1-05 to 24.1-08 and 24.1-10)</b></p>

<b>REPORT 4: SWELLENDAM IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Swellendam Municipality, 2002)	
<b>ISSUE: ENVIRONMENTAL CONSERVATION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
4.1	<p>The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy:  E5) Sustainable environmental management which is based on bioregional planning principles, an Integrated Environmental Management System and the findings of a Strategic Environmental Analysis.</p> <p>The following projects have thus been identified:  E5.1) Conservation of the Lower Breede River.  <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.1-15 to 24.1-18)</b></p>

## 24.2 NATURAL RESOURCES

It is recognized that human activities are progressively reducing the intrinsic community-supporting capacity of the ODM. Natural resources essential for sustainable development are increasingly being destroyed or depleted. At the same time human demand for these resources is growing fast.

It is envisaged that if current rates of land degradation and resource utilisation continue, the natural resources of the ODM could come under serious pressure. This, in turn, could have a serious effect on development and, subsequently on the well-being of the people of the area.

In the ODM the natural resources are particularly valuable, with all the community-supporting sectors being almost totally dependent on them. Resource conservation in the ODM, therefore, has a particularly strong socio-economic connotation. This implies that resource conservation needs to be applied as a fundamental element in all sectors, guiding decision-making in respect of development and land use.

The tables below provide guidelines for the sustainable use and conservation of the natural resources of the ODM, namely the **rocks, soils and minerals** (refer to Chapter 24.3), **water** (Chapter 24.4), **flora** (Chapter 24.5), and **fauna** (Chapter 24.6).

### 24.2.1 VISION FOR THE NATURAL RESOURCES OF THE ODM

#### VISION

Natural resources must be acknowledged and conserved as the fundamental requirements for sustainable development in the ODM.

## 24.3 ROCKS, SOILS AND MINERALS

Soil conservation in the ODM is generally not of the required standard. Inadequate control over urban and rural development, and indiscriminate agricultural practices and mining result in substantial losses of topsoil.

### 24.3.1 GROUP 1 STRATEGIES FOR ROCKS, SOILS AND MINERALS

The strategies, programmes, projects and action plans that will have spatial implications are summarised in Table 34 on the following page.

**Table 34: Strategies with spatial implications for rocks, soils and minerals.**

<b>KEY ISSUE: REGIONAL MINING DEVELOPMENT</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Regulate the exploitation and utilisation of all geological and mineral resources to limit ecological and aesthetic damage.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.3-01	Regulate mining in accordance with the SPCs.	<p>Ensure that no mining is undertaken in SPC A and B areas.</p> <p>Rehabilitate existing mining sites.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with the Department of Minerals and Energy.</p> <p>ODM must regulate the opening up of new borrow pits. Institute compulsory IEM and EIA prior to opening of any new pits in terms of the Minerals Act, 1991 (Act 50 of 1991).</p> <p>The ODM must institute regular monitoring and auditing of borrow pits.</p> <p>Applicants must submit rehabilitation plans prior to opening of new pits.</p>

### 24.3.2 GROUP 2 STRATEGIES FOR ROCKS, SOILS AND MINERALS

The strategies, programmes, projects and action plans that will have no spatial implications are summarised in Table 35 below.

**Table 35: Strategies with no spatial implications for rocks, soils and minerals.**

<b>KEY ISSUE: SOIL CONSERVATION</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Limit loss of agricultural soil to a 'tolerable' level (10 tonnes/ha/annum).	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.3-02	Impose and monitor soil conservation programmes in all sectors.	<p>Institute effective law enforcement.</p> <p>Institute soil and crop management / monitoring schemes.</p>	<p>Department of Land Affairs and Department of Agriculture must impose the applicable legislation (refer to the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 {Act 43 of 1983}; Mountain Catchment Areas Act, 1970 {Act 63 of 1970}; and Environment Conservation Act {ECA}, 1989 {Act 73 of 1989}).</p> <p>Department of Land Affairs, Department of Agriculture and Farmers Union must ensure that farmers comply with management plans.</p>

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.3-03	Conserve biodiversity and the life-supporting natural processes and functions of ecosystems.	Promote the importance of soil as a primary resource.  Institute compulsory monitoring programmes.	Department of Land Affairs and Department of Agriculture must appoint appropriately trained staff for soil conservation.  Department of Land Affairs, Department of Agriculture and WCNCB must institute integrated environmental education at all levels of society to confirm public liability for soil conservation.
24.3-04	Rehabilitate soil erosion sites.	Draft and institute appropriate rehabilitation plans in respect of each development. <b>(Refer to Strategy E5, Overberg IDP)</b>  Rehabilitate land invaded by sand.	Department of Land Affairs, Department of Agriculture must ensure that developers comply with rehabilitation plans.
24.3-05	Institute programmes for managing indigenous and alien vegetation.	Regulate the manipulation of natural riparian and aquatic vegetation that could influence erosion.	Department of Land Affairs, Department of Agriculture, WCNCB and SANParks must ensure that developers comply with rehabilitation plans.
24.3-06	Control all alien plant infestations.	Draft and impose integrated management plans for alien plant eradication.	DWAF, DEAT, WCNCB, SANParks in collaboration with private landowners must control alien vegetation.
24.3-07	Apply appropriate land-use guidelines in accordance with SPCs.	Regulate grazing in accordance with appropriate ecological carrying capacity levels in SPC C areas.	To be facilitated and monitored by Department of Agriculture in collaboration with landowners.
24.3-08	Determine and monitor erosion sites.	Institute integrated baseline studies, compulsory scheduled monitoring and environmental auditing.  Draft Environmental Management Plans for identified areas of concern.  Regulate coastal developments in accordance with the CZP principles.	WCNCB, SANParks and ODM to collaborate with research departments and universities.  WCNCB, SANParks and ODM to ensure management of identified areas.  ODM and local municipalities to ensure compliance with the principles and guidelines.
24.3-09	Apply appropriate management practices.	Regulate unnatural disturbance regimes in accordance with ecological requirements.	WCNCB, SANParks and landowners to apply 'minimum interference' or 'adaptive interference' burning programmes.  WCNCB, SANParks and landowners to regulate recreational activities.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.3-10	Control construction of new dams.	Impose a moratorium on the building of new dams and new irrigation systems on unsuitable soil types.	DWAF to impose compulsory IEM and EIA prior to major agricultural development.  DWAF and Department of Agriculture must prohibit inappropriate agricultural development on marginal soils.

#### KEY ISSUE: MINING OF GEOLOGICAL AND MINERAL RESOURCES

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Regulate the exploitation and utilisation of all geological and mineral resources to limit ecological and aesthetic damage.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.3-11	Regulate all mining in accordance with the applicable legislation.	<p>Prepare and submit the required applications.</p> <p>Monitor compliance with statutory processes and conditions of approval.</p> <p>Former mining areas should be designated as SPC B.d areas, which are to be rehabilitated and afforded appropriate statutory conservation status (<b>refer to Plan 2</b>).</p>	<p>Proponents of mining must obtain the necessary permits to mine minerals, rock and sand from the Department of Minerals and Energy, in terms of the Minerals Act, 1991 (Act 50 of 1991).</p> <p>The proponent must submit an Environmental Management Programme Report (EMPRs) to the Department of Minerals and Energy before mining may commence.</p> <p>The necessary permit in terms of Section 21 of the ECA, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989) must be obtained from Cape Nature Conservation before mining may commence. Depending on the anticipated impacts and scale of the proposed mining operation, a full EIA, together with full public participation may be required.</p> <p>Such activities will also be subject to an appropriate EIA. In terms of the Minerals Act, 1991 (Act 50 of 1991), rehabilitation of mined areas needs to be conducted by the mining company on a continuous basis in accordance with an approved EMPR or EMS.</p>



STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.3-12	Ensure effective rehabilitation of mining sites.	Institute regular monitoring and auditing of borrow pits. <b>(Refer to Strategy E5, Overberg IDP)</b>  Rehabilitate quarries where production no longer takes places.	Mining companies must undertake rehabilitation of sections of the mined areas simultaneously with the mining operations, especially with respect to sand, rock and gravel mining.  An environmental control officer (ECO) must monitor rehabilitation process.
24.3-13	Control all forms of mining.	Impose a moratorium on mining of sand from river-beds.  Impose a moratorium on use of road and building material from sites of geological significance.	Department of Minerals and Energy must impose the applicable legislation (refer to Minerals Act, 1991 {Act 50 of 1991}).  Department of Minerals and Energy must institute effective law enforcement.

### 24.3.3 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 36 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to the natural resources (rocks, soils and minerals) of the ODM. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 36: Natural Resources: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

REPORT 1: OVERBERG INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (ODM, 2002)	
ISSUE: SOIL CONSERVATION	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.1	A long stretch of coastal dunes, which are very sensitive for disturbance, occur along the coast and contribute to the sensitivity of the coastline for development. Sand invasion is already occurring and will increase - a balance must be strike between conservation and development in the coastal zone. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.3-04, 24.3-05 and 24.3-08)</b>
1.2	The biggest problems with drift sand are experienced between Waenhuiskrans and Koppie-Alleen (±3 000 ha covered), between Struisbaai and Quoin Point (±700 ha covered), between Quoin Point and Hermanus (±600 ha covered) and between Hermanus and Rooiels (±150 ha covered). In the latter mentioned area houses had to be evacuated permanently, while the reclamation of land is costly and time-consuming. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.3-04 to 24.3-05 and 24.3-08)</b>
1.3	Soil conservation/protection is not receiving equal attention on all farms, while the authorities are not doing enough to address the issue. It is especially a problem in the southern mountainous areas of Bailonstoring, Kleinrivier, Bredasdorp and Soetmuis where most of the mountain land is in the hands of private owners and where wildflowers are constantly picked. Continuous intense veld fires, invasion of exotic vegetation, erosion and the ill-considered utilisation of indigenous fynbos are the most important problems. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.3-02 to 24.3-10)</b>
1.4	Rehabilitate land invaded by sand. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.3-04)</b>

## 24.4 WATER

Water is the most critical natural resource in the ODM. All the sectors and communities are dependent on a sustainable supply of water from river systems such as the Klein, Riviersonderend, Sout, Heuningnes, Bot and Breede, as well sub-quaternary catchments and subterranean aquifers.

The importance of the water resource must be considered within the context of South Africa's predominantly semi-arid climate. The availability of water is, therefore, the most critical factor in the sustained development of especially the northern, drier, parts of the ODM.

The mountain catchment areas<sup>28</sup> that feed the primary rivers of the region fall within the Fynbos Biome. Fynbos has unique intrinsic water conservation capabilities and subsequently plays a critical role in the maintenance of the natural *water cycle*<sup>29</sup>. The overriding objective of water conservation is the management of the catchment areas so as to maintain an optimal sustainable yield of high quality water. Maintenance of water yield entails ensuring the capacity of a catchment area to yield water at historical flow rates.

Land-use patterns largely influence the maintenance of water yields. Interference with the natural conditions in mountain catchment areas, e.g. draining, canalising or cultivating areas such as vleis, seepage areas, riparian areas and stream-bed alluvium, over-exploitation of natural vegetation (e.g. flower picking) and the uncontrolled spread of alien vegetation is detrimental to the proper functioning of a catchment system. The quantity of water draining to river systems of the region is increasingly being threatened by alien plant invasions in the catchments. It is therefore paramount for all development in catchment areas to be regulated appropriately.

There is a general perception that current water use in some areas within the region is exceeding the carrying capacity of the available resource. The depletion of the water resources of the ODM is disturbing. River sections are often pumped dry during the mid-summer resulting in serious environmental degradation. This could cause a complete collapse of ecological cycles in the rivers, and should receive urgent attention.

The availability of water also holds the key to the settlement of emergent or small farmers. It is paramount for proposed new developments to be considered in a bioregional context in terms of (a) water availability, (b) environmental requirements, and (c) overall viability of the proposed scheme.

In terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), land use planning and regulation should be used as an *instrument* to manage water resources. This document will, therefore, have a critical role in ensuring the appropriate management of the water resources of the region.

---

<sup>28</sup> **Catchment** (or catchment area) is defined as the entire land area from which water flows into a river; catchments can be divided into smaller 'sub-catchments', which are usually the area, which drains a tributary to the main river or a part of the main river.

<sup>29</sup> The **Water (hydrological) cycle** describes the natural process of moving water out of the oceans, into the atmosphere, and back to the land and oceans.

### 24.4.1 GROUP 1 STRATEGIES FOR WATER MANAGEMENT

The strategies, programmes, projects and action plans that will have spatial implications are summarised in Table 37 below.

**Table 37: Strategies with spatial implications for water management.**

KEY ISSUE: CONSERVE CATCHMENT AREAS			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Ensure appropriate management of all catchment areas within the municipal area.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.4-01	Manage <i>mountain catchment areas</i> in accordance with existing management systems.	Establish CMAs <sup>30</sup> in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).	DWAF must establish CMAs and WUAs <sup>31</sup> in collaboration with all role-players.  WCNCB must update and re-institute management plans in collaboration with land-owners.

### 24.4.2 GROUP 2 STRATEGIES FOR WATER MANAGEMENT

The strategies, programmes, projects and action plans that will have no spatial implications are summarised in Table 38 below.

**Table 38: Strategies with no spatial implications for water management.**

KEY ISSUE: NEW IRRIGATION SCHEMES			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Establish viable and sustainable new irrigation schemes to facilitate sustainable agricultural development.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.4-02	Undertake thorough hydrogeological studies.	Explore borehole prospects in the district municipal area.	To be facilitated by DWAF.
24.4-03	Determine ecological effects of proposed and existing schemes.	Quantify effect of new irrigation schemes on streamflow dynamics, future down-stream development, and water quality.	To be facilitated by DWAF.
24.4-04	Institute effective public participation of all I&APs when considering major developments.	Institute compulsory IEM on a bioregional scale.	To be facilitated by DWAF.
		Entrench existing rights of riparian landowners.	To be facilitated by DWAF.

<sup>30</sup> Catchment Management Agencies.

<sup>31</sup> Water User Associations.

<b>KEY ISSUE: CONSERVATION OF CATCHMENTS</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure conservation of all catchment areas within the ODM.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.4-05	Maintain ecological processes inherent to the catchment systems.	Include all mountain catchment areas into statutory protected areas or conservancies (SPC A & B Areas).	To be facilitated by DWAF.
24.4-06	Protect sensitive areas such as 'sponge areas'.	Maintain biodiversity and the ecological cycles and processes essential for catchment dynamics.	To be facilitated by DWAF.
24.4-07	Include the private sector in catchment management.	Develop and institute educational programmes to foster goodwill and co-operation.	To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB, SANParks and landowners.  WCNCB must update and re-institute management plans in collaboration with land-owners.
24.4-08	Consolidate legislation.	Review and amend existing legislation to ensure effective conservation of catchments.	To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB and SANParks.  DWAF and WCNCB must administer the Mountain Catchment Areas Act, 1970 (Act 63 of 1970).
24.4-09	Co-ordinate catchment management at all levels (bioregional, catchment, and sub-catchment levels).	Establish a CMA for all major catchments.  Establish WUAs.	To be facilitated by DWAF.  To be facilitated by DWAF in collaboration with all I&APs.
24.4-10	Regulate unnatural disturbance regimes in accordance with ecological requirements.	Institute ' <i>minimum interference</i> ' or adaptive interference management programmes.	To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB, SANParks and landowners.
24.4-11	Control all alien plant infestations in river courses.	Draft and apply integrated management plans for control of alien plant infestations.  Institute clearing projects to ensure the sustainable supply of water and to increase biodiversity.	To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB, SANParks and landowners.  To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB and SANParks.
24.4-12	Control all forms of pollution in catchment areas.	Draft and apply integrated pollution management plans.	To be facilitated by DWAF in collaboration with the CMAs and WUAs.
24.4-13	Regulate modification of river beds and natural flow patterns.	Develop and institute legislation for protecting riverbeds.  Impose a moratorium on the bulldozing of rivers and the construction of levees.	To be facilitated by DWAF.  To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB and SANParks.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.4-13	Regulate modification of river beds and natural flow patterns.	Any modification of riverbeds must be subject to EIA (to be facilitated by DWAF).	To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB and SANParks.

#### KEY ISSUE: WATER RESOURCE CONSERVATION

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Ensure conservation of all the water resources of the region.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.4-14	Regulate future development in accordance with the availability of water.	Determine the total carrying capacity of the water resource (including urban, rural, agricultural, industrial and ecological requirements) <b>(Refer to Strategy B1, Overberg IDP).</b>	To be facilitated by DWAF, CMAs and WUAs.
24.4-15	Promote effective agricultural practices.	Determine nutrient requirements of crops and apply nutrients accordingly.  Regulate planting of crops with high water requirements.	To be facilitated by Department of Agriculture in collaboration with irrigation boards and farmers unions.
24.4-16	Conserve water through 'effective water management'.	Institute measures to determine water requirements of crops, soil and air moisture content.  Monitor all water use within the ODM and across municipal and provincial boundaries.  Develop and institute the following: a) Appropriate irrigation practices according to crop requirements. b) Soil moisture monitoring probes or systems such as 'Enviro Scan'. c) Scheduled irrigation. d) Effective irrigation systems.  Institute effective water awareness programmes such as the preparation of brochures and pamphlets.  Compile & implement a Water Services Plan, which addresses the future management of the water resources, particularly clarifying the functions and powers of the parties involved.	To be facilitated by Department of Agriculture in collaboration with irrigation boards and farmers unions.  To be facilitated by DWAF.  To be facilitated by irrigation boards and farmers unions.  To be facilitated by DWAF in collaboration with local municipalities.  To be facilitated by DWAF in collaboration with district and local municipalities.
24.4-17	Institute measures to repair leaking storage dams or to utilise water leaking from these dams.	Repair existing irrigation furrow.	To be facilitated by DWAF and CMAs.

<b>KEY ISSUE: LEVIES</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure equitable payment of levies by <i>all</i> water users.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.4-18	Consider equitable levies on all water users.	Determine appropriate levies – portion of the levies to be used for catchment management.	To be facilitated by DWAF and CMAs.
24.4-19	Standardise levies.	<p>Consider standard levies on water for urban, agricultural and industrial use.</p> <p>Institute the following:</p> <p>a) Sliding-scale levies to encourage more efficient water use.</p> <p>b) Pay incrementally more for higher water use.</p>	To be facilitated by DWAF, CMAs and WUAs.

<b>KEY ISSUE: WATER ALLOCATIONS AND PROVISION</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure equitable access to all rightful users.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.4-20	Allocate water in accordance with the available water resource.	<p>Determine appropriate allocations in accordance with environmental requirements.</p> <p>Ensure that at least 90% of the water collected by a catchment be reserved for use within the system (i.e. prevent exportation of water from a catchment).</p>	<p>To be facilitated by DWAF, CMAs and WUAs.</p> <p>To be facilitated by DWAF, CMAs and WUAs.</p>
24.4-21	Implement strategies to overcome capacity problems experienced by Overberg Water.	Promote co-operation and specialised support in order to prevent economic stagnation in the agricultural sector. <b>(Refer to Strategy B2, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be facilitated by DWAF, CMAs, WUAs and Overberg Water.
24.4-22	Ensure minimum streamflow requirements of the natural environment.	<p>Determine and entrench the minimum water requirements of the natural environment prior to allocating water to any other user.</p> <p>Undertake a survey regarding water source capacity across municipal boundaries.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by DWAF.</p> <p>To be facilitated by DWAF in collaboration with CMAs and ODM.</p>
24.4-23	Ensure sufficient and sustainable water provision to all rightful users.	<p>Ensure the improvement and upgrading of existing water reticulation systems.</p> <p>Undertake a survey regarding the development of possible growth points regarding bulk infrastructure in rural settlements and on commercial farms.</p>	<p>To be facilitate by CMAs in collaboration with DWAF and the ODM.</p> <p>“</p>

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.4-23	Ensure sufficient and sustainable water provision to all rightful users.	Ensure the high quality and quantity of water sources as well as the provision of water to satisfy basic needs, e.g. housing and sanitation, economic development and emergency services. <b>(Refer to Strategy B3, Overberg IDP)</b>  Investigate the viability of providing additional water storage dams/tanks for sustainable water provision throughout the year.	To be facilitate by CMAs in collaboration with DWAF and the ODM.  “
24.4-24	Ensure water quality of a high standard.	Institute integrated water quality studies and compulsory scheduled monitoring.	To be facilitated by DWAF, CMAs, WUAs, and ODM.

KEY ISSUE: EXPLORING ALTERNATIVE WATER RESOURCES			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Sustainable utilisation of alternative water resources such as ground water.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.4-25	Explore groundwater resources.	Institute research programmes to determine sustainability and feasibility of groundwater exploration.  Draft an Environmental Management Plan for the management of groundwater resources.  Institute joint ventures between government and the private sector to explore alternative resources.  Apply for funding from RDP, THRIP ( <i>Technology and Human Resources for Industry Programme</i> ), Water Research Commission and the Dept of Trade and Industry.	To be facilitated by DWAF.  To be facilitated by DWAF, CMAs and ODM.  To be facilitated by DWAF, CMAs and ODM.  To be facilitated by DWAF, CMAs and ODM.
24.4-26	Investigate water provision through pipelines.	Consider increasing the diameter of pipelines to the major settlements to ensure sufficient water supply during seasonal periods.	To be facilitated by DWAF in collaboration with the ODM.
24.4-27	Determine the viability of water recycling.	Institute research programmes to determine viability of the re-use of sewerage and industrial water.	To be facilitated by DWAF.

<b>KEY ISSUE: FLOOD CONTROL</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Limit flood damage to infrastructure and developed land to 'acceptable levels'.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.4-28	Regulate the construction of obstructions in rivers and streams.	Institute compulsory EIA prior to construction of dams and weirs.  Prevent the disturbance of the natural riverbeds and natural flow patterns.	To be facilitated by DWAF and CMAs.  “
24.4-29	Conserve riparian and riverine vegetation.	Draft and institute integrated management plans for rivers and streams.  Minimise nutrient leaching from riparian agricultural practices.	To be facilitated by DWAF and CMAs.  To be facilitated by DWAF and CMAs in collaboration with the Department of Agriculture.
24.4-30	Prevent or mitigate the negative effects of essential bulk water releases from dams.	Establish effective communication between authorities and riparian landowners.	To be facilitated by DWAF.
24.4-31	Institute proactive measures to prevent or mitigate possible negative effects of natural floods.	Draft and apply integrated contingency and action plans for floods.  Determine 1:50 year flood lines for all rivers in the ODM	To be facilitated by DWAF, CMAs, irrigation boards and WUAs.  “
24.4-32	Prevent or mitigate the negative effects of natural floods.	Establish partnerships to repair and combat erosion and create employment opportunities.	To be undertaken by private companies, DWAF, DEAT and Department of Agriculture throughout the District.

### 24.4.3 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 39 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to the water situation within the ODM. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 39: Water: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

<b>REPORT 1: OVERBERG INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (ODM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: CONSERVE CATCHMENT AREAS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.1	Water schemes in the ODM will reach maximum capacity within two years and should there be no timely provision for expansion, it will effect the capacity for future development of the agricultural sector and lead to stagnation in the industry. It also has an impact on the settlement of new farmers. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-02, 24.4-03, 24.4-14, 24.4-21 to 24.4-27)</b>



<b>ISSUE: CONSERVATION OF CATCHMENTS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.2	Marshes and rivers are threatened by pollution and silting up (also by water plants). Most of the catchments of marshes are being used for agricultural purposes and this causes fertilisers, nutrients and topsoil to be washed into the marsh areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-11 to 24.4-13, 24.5-08)</b>
1.3	Residential development also plays a role in the degradation of marshes. The most substantial problems are occurring along the Kleinrivier and the Kleinriviersvlei between Stanford and Hermanus, at the Bot River lagoon, the marshes at Kleinmond, mouth of the Uilenkraals River and along the Breede River. Almost nothing is being done to implement biological and other measures for control. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-06, 24.4-07, 24.4-10 to 24.4-13)</b>
<b>ISSUE: WATER RESOURCE CONSERVATION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.4	Overberg Water should be assisted to overcome its capacity problems (within 2 years), while existing infrastructure should be utilised to the maximum. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-21)</b>
1.5	A holistic approach with regard to requirement, management and planning should prevail in respect of the supply of water in the ODM and should receive urgent attention as first priority. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-25)</b>
1.6	Water is already a sparse resource throughout the ODM, while a large percentage thereof is being utilised in the Cape metropolitan area and the Helderberg Basin Underground water sources are threatened by septic sewerage systems, continued development and migration and the accompanying increasing demand for water. The Overberg coastal area is experiencing the worst problems, with the underground sources being threatened by over-utilisation, pollution and even salinisation. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-06, 24.4-09 to 24.4-17, 24.4-22 to 24.4-27)</b>
1.7	Completed water studies are not being united and used to the maximum. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-14, 24.4-22 to 24.4-25)</b>
1.8	The fact that the division of functions between municipalities is not finalised, makes planning for water services difficult. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-16)</b>
1.9	Holistic needs approach with regard to the quality and quantity of sources and the provision of water for basic needs in respect of housing and sanitation, economic development and emergency services. The fact that priorities and emphasis with regard to e.g. in-house supply, availability of water, etc. may differ from community to community should be taken into consideration. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-14 and 24.4-23)</b>
1.10	Holistic planning in the form of a Water Services Plan that can address infrastructure and sources on a regional level and Water Management Plans for the various local areas, focusing on maintenance, running costs and quality of water and the amalgamation of existing water studies for the ODM. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-16)</b>
1.11	Water is a sparse resource that should be managed effectively in order to promote continued economic growth, with special emphasise on the assurance that there will be a sufficient water supply for commercial agriculture and for projects for settlement of new farmers. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-20 to 24.4-24)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.12	Especially in the Napier/Bredasdorp/Swellendam/Calendon Rûens areas most of the farms are dependant on scheme water for household purposes and for the livestock branch of the industry. Thus water being taken away from agricultural sector for the sake of residential development will have a tremendous negative impact on the local economy and rural communities. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-21)</b>
1.13	Investigate the delivery of sufficient standard scheme water to milk stables in order to qualify them for export to overseas markets. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-03, 24.4-21)</b>
<b>ISSUE: WATER ALLOCATIONS AND PROVISION</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.14	While the uplifting of communities brings about an increasing demand for water, marginalised users are being subsidised, but not the development of infrastructure and sources. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-20 and 24.4-23)</b>
<b>ISSUE: EXPLORING ALTERNATIVE WATER RESOURCES</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.15	Funding for investigations into supplementary sources and the creation of new infrastructure is lacking. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-23)</b>
1.16	The desalination and recycling of water should be investigated on a district level. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-27)</b>

<b>REPORT 2: THEEWATERSKLOOF IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Theewaterskloof Municipality, 2002)	
<b>ISSUE: GENERAL WATER MANAGEMENT COMMENTS</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.1	Upgrading of reservoirs, water networks and irrigation dams.. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-23)</b>
2.2	Deforestation of alien plant species and the cleaning of towns. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-11 and 24.5-08)</b>
2.3	Investigate water capacity for agricultural use. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-14)</b>
2.4	Additional water supply and long term investigation into water purification. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-25 to 24.4-27)</b>
2.5	Flood prevention measures. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-28 to 24.4-32)</b>
2.6	Regular maintenance, developing and upgrading of water feed to towns and rural areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-14, 24.4-16 and 24.4-23)</b>
2.7	Improve water capacity and efficiency. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-14, 24.4-16 and 24.4-23)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.8	Reinstating of water canals (still water), upgrading and servicing thereof, including the eradication of alien plants. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-11, 24.4-23 and 24.4-26)</b>
2.9	2020 Vision Water audit – visit schools, this project must be part of Municipalities's water management plan. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-16)</b>

<b>REPORT 3: OVERSTRAND IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Overstrand Municipality, 2003/2004)	
<b>ISSUE: GENERAL WATER MANAGEMENT COMMENTS</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.1	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide potable water to all household and business/industries in the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Implement projects as per capital budget.</li> <li>2) To develop and manage water resources for a sustainable supply.</li> <li>3) To manage water treatment to supply SABS quality water.</li> <li>4) To develop/upgrade and manage bulk distribution to reservoirs for a sustainable supply with 36 hours storage capacity.</li> <li>5) To develop/upgrade and manage bulk distribution to reservoirs for a sustainable supply and adequate pressure above 2 bar.</li> <li>6) To upgrade and manage connections and meter to supply metered connections within 200m of each household.</li> <li>7) To implement/continue with water demand management and to have total water awareness and overall water loss of less than 18%.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-20 to 24.4-24)</b></p>

<b>REPORT 4: CAPE AGULHAS INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN</b> (CAM, 2002)	
<b>ISSUE: CONSERVE CATCHMENT AREAS</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
4.1	<p>The following strategies and projects were identified with regard to the basic provision of water to the Cape Agulhas Municipality:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B1) Provide water while saving it               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B1.1) Improving and upgrading of the water network</li> <li>B1.2) Manage the loss of water</li> <li>B1.3) Replace watermeters and valves</li> <li>B1.4) Sink more boreholes</li> <li>B1.5) Telemetry stations</li> <li>B1.6) Build new water pipeline</li> <li>B1.7) Repair Irrigation furrow</li> <li>B1.8) Buy borehole pumps</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-16, 24.4-17, 24.4-23, 24.4-25 and 24.4-26)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: SOIL CONSERVATION</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
4.2	<p>Institute projects with regard to the clearing of alien vegetation, which is also linked to the management of water losses.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-11 and 24.5-08)</b></p>

<b>REPORT 5: SWELLENDAM IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Swellendam Municipality, 2002)	
<b>ISSUE: WATER PROVISION AND PURIFICATION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.1	<p>The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy:  B2) Holistic need approach, management and planning with regard to water provision and purification.</p> <p>The following projects have thus been identified:  B2.1) Clearance regarding functions and water management  B2.2) Provide clean potable water of a good quality to Infanta  B2.3) Provide clean potable water of a good quality to Swellendam  B2.4) Provide clean potable water of a good quality to Barrydale  B2.5) Provide clean potable water of a good quality to Suurbraak  B2.6) Provide clean potable water of a good quality to Buffeljagtsriver  B2.7) Water for agriculture  <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.4-16 and 24.4-23)</b></p>

## 24.5 FLORA

*'Natural vegetation is the visual expression of the environment; it is a product of the action of environmental factors over time and hence can be a valuable indicator of potential productivity of ecosystems'* (Bayer, 1970).

As described in #8.1, the Overberg District Municipality falls within the Cape Floral Kingdom, which is one of the Six Floral Kingdoms of the world. As stated in #8.1, the ODM includes the southern most extent of the Fynbos Biome, while some Renosterveld and patches of forests are also found in the municipal area.

It is imperative that the actions of the conservation agencies (especially the WCNCB and SANParks), as well as initiatives such as STEP, SKEP and CAPE in respect of the conservation of the natural resources of the region be properly co-ordinated and supported by all I&APs. In this regard, it is essential that these institutions make full use of this document as the statutory framework for the implementation of their recommended strategies and action plans and that such strategies and action plans be implemented in accordance with the bioregional planning and management approach advocated by this document. It is also important that all institutions recognise the status of the ODM as the primary authority in the ODM through which all strategies and action plans should be directed.

### 24.5.1 GROUP 1 STRATEGIES FOR FLORA CONSERVATION

The strategies, programmes, projects and action plans that will have spatial implications are summarised in Table 40 below.

**Table 40: Strategies with spatial implication for flora conservation.**

KEY ISSUE: SPECIES DIVERSITY			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Conserve the diversity of plants that are indigenous to the region at species, population and community level.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.5-01	Conserve sensitive plant habitats as indicated by CAPE, SKEP and STEP.	Establish statutory conservation areas in conservation-worthy areas <b>(Refer to Plan 4)</b> .	The CAPE Project must synthesise existing research results and identify needs.
24.5-02	Establish an additional biosphere reserve in the region.	<b>Refer to Plan 3 and Chapter 19.</b>	To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with WCNCB and SANParks.
24.5-03	Establish a system of protected nature areas.	<b>Refer to Plan 4 and Chapter 20.</b>	To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with WCNCB, SANParks, STEP, SKEP and CAPE.
24.5-04	Establish bioregional conservancies.	<b>Refer to Plan 2 and Plan 4 and Chapter 21.</b>	To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with WCNCB.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.5-05	Promote the establishment of Special Management Areas in the areas indicated by <b>Plan 2 and Plan 4.</b>	<b>Refer to Plan 2 and Plan 4 and Chapter 22.</b>	To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with landowners.

## 24.5.2 GROUP 2 STRATEGIES FOR FLORA CONSERVATION

The strategies, programmes, projects and action plans that will have no spatial implications are summarised in Table 41 below.

**Table 41: Strategies with no spatial implications for flora conservation.**

KEY ISSUE: CONSERVING SPECIES DIVERSITY			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Conserve the diversity of plants that are indigenous to the municipal area at species, population and community level.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.5-06	Identify and conserve all known sensitive habitats.	Institute research programmes to identify sensitive habitats.  Develop and institute appropriate management plans for each sensitive habitat.	To be facilitated by STEP, SKEP, CAPE, WCNCB and SANParks.  “
24.5-07	Maintain or simulate natural disturbance regimes.	Apply <i>'adaptive interference'</i> or <i>'minimum interference'</i> management strategies.	To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks, DWAF and landowners.
24.5-08	Control all infestations of alien plants.	Appoint Work for Water to assist with the eradication of alien plants.  Prepare and apply integrated management plans for alien plant eradication.  Expand the existing Work for Water projects to farms and other areas. <b>(Refer to Strategy E2.1, Overberg IDP)</b>  Special attention should be given to the clearing of road reserves to prohibit the spreading of alien vegetation into farmlands. <b>(Refer to Strategy B5.2, Overberg IDP)</b>  Rehabilitate land where invaders have been removed. <b>(Refer to Strategy E5, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks, DWAF and landowners.  To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks, DWAF and landowners.  To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks, DWAF and landowners.  To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks, DWAF and landowners.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.5-08	Control all infestations of alien plants.	Investigate the processing of secondary products from wood and other waste material cleared from the removal of alien vegetation. <b>(Refer to Strategy E2.1, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks, DWAF and landowners.
24.5-09	Institute effective environmental education.	Develop and institute environmental education programmes at all levels of society.  Prepare and distribute brochures, present seminars and field days on a regular basis.	To be facilitated by WCNCB and SANParks.  “
24.5-10	Regulate flower shows.	Regulate the picking of flowers for shows in accordance with the existing permit system.	To be facilitated by WCNCB and SANParks.

#### KEY ISSUE: CONSERVATION OF RARE AND ENDEMIC SPECIES

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Maintain minimum viable populations of rare endemic plant species.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.5-11	Prevent local extinction of rare endemic species.	Cultivate rare endemic plants for redistribution.  Draft and apply integrated management plans for all rare endemic species.	To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks, conservancy committees and landowners.
24.5-12	Mitigate the negative effects of disasters.	Develop and institute contingency plans.  Collect, stratify and store seed of rare endemic species.	To be facilitated by WCNCB and SANParks.
24.5-13	Protect rare and endemic plant species.	Conserve the natural habitats of rare endemic plant species.  Register statutory conservation areas over all conservation-worthy areas.  Institute effective law enforcement.	To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks, conservancy committees and landowners.  All conservation agencies must support wildlife trade monitoring programmes such as <b>TRAFFIC</b> (supported by WWF SA).  To be facilitated by WCNCB and SANParks.

<b>KEY ISSUE: SUSTAINABLE UTILISATION OF INDIGENOUS FLORA</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Promote the sustainable utilisation of indigenous flora for financial benefit.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.5-14	Promote the value of indigenous flora.	Institute and sustain educational programmes regarding the ecology of indigenous flora.	WCNCB, SANParks, STEP, SKEP and CAPE.
24.5-15	Regulate harvesting of natural plant products.	Develop and institute management plans for plant harvesting in accordance with ecological requirements.  Institute regular monitoring and environmental auditing in areas where indigenous plants are harvested.	To be facilitated by WCNCB and the Department of Agriculture.  To be facilitated by WCNCB and the Department of Agriculture in collaboration with farmers unions.
24.5-16	Regulate grazing in accordance with agricultural stocking rates.	Determine and apply ecological carrying capacity and adapt agricultural stocking rates accordingly.	To be facilitated by WCNCB and the Department of Agriculture in collaboration with farmers unions.

<b>KEY ISSUE: SUSTAINABLE FORESTRY</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Promote the sustainable utilisation of forests for the benefits of the local economy and communities.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.5-17	Regulate afforestation.	Institute programmes to ensure sustainability of afforestation.  Ensure afforestation in accordance with strict management plans.	Proponents of forestry projects must undertake compulsory IEM and EIA prior to any afforestation.  To be facilitated by ODM in accordance with DWAF and private landowners.
24.5-18	Rehabilitate afforested areas in catchment areas.	Institute programmes to rehabilitate existing non-viable forestry areas.	To be facilitated by DWAF, WCNCB, SANParks and landowners in catchment areas.
24.5-19	Determine feasibility of alternative farming options.	Research alternatives such as forestry on less productive soils.  Create awards for sustainable forestry practices.	To be facilitated by Department of Agriculture in collaboration with the <b>Plant Protection Research Institute</b> , Agricultural Research Unit.



### 24.5.3 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 42 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to the unique flora of the ODM. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 42: Flora: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

<b>REPORT 1: OVERBERG INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (ODM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: CONSERVING SPECIES DIVERSITY</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.1	Alien vegetation is the single most important threat to the environment of the Overberg. Nationally the region is regarded as one of the most invested areas in the country. The removal of aliens, the recycling of plant material by means of side industries and the accompanying rehabilitation of recovered land create opportunities for job creation. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.5-08)</b>
1.2	Alien vegetation and weeds on road and rail reserves and ESCOM and Telkom property should receive specific attention. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.5-08)</b>
1.3	Alien vegetation occurs throughout the ODM, while the eradication thereof currently only receive attention on state owned land and mountain catchments. Farmers in the low potential agricultural areas are experiencing a number of problems with the eradication of invaders such as Scottish and Australian thistle. The poor management, as a result of lack of funding, of existing conservation areas, forestry land and road and rail reserves causes the spreading of invaders to adjacent farms. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.5-08)</b>
1.4	Continuation of projects to remove alien vegetation. The action is enhancing the sustainable utilisation of the ODM's water sources and is creating job opportunities and the opportunity to establish industries from the waste products of the 'Work for Water' projects. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.5-08)</b>
<b>REPORT 2: THEEWATERSKLOOF IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (Theewaterskloof Municipality, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: GENERAL FLORA CONSERVATION COMMENTS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.1	Weeding of plants through the deforestation of over grown areas (partnership with Fynbos authorities). <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.5-08, 24.5-17 to 24.5-19)</b>

## 24.6 FAUNA

As described in #8.2, the ODM comprises areas of immense importance for the conservation of avifaunal and aquatic biodiversity. In this regard, reference is made to, *inter alia*, the following:

- a) The ODM is home to the South African national bird namely the large blue crane.
- b) The Potberg Kloof in the De Hoop Nature Reserve is the exclusive habitat of the Western Cape's last breeding colony of the Cape (griffon) vulture.
- c) The De Hoop and De Mond Ramsar Sites has the highest diversity of aquatic invertebrates assessed in the Western Cape to date.

### 24.6.1 GROUP 1 STRATEGIES FOR FAUNA CONSERVATION

The strategies, programmes, projects and action plans that will have spatial implications are summarised in Table 43 below.

**Table 43: Strategies with spatial implications for fauna conservation.**

KEY ISSUE: CONSOLIDATING AND EXTENDING HABITATS			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Consolidate and extend the natural habitats of the indigenous animal communities of the region.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.6-01	Consolidate the natural habitats of endangered animal species.	Establish conservancies over core habitat of the Large Blue Crane and Cape Griffon Vulture ( <b>refer to Plan 2</b> ).  Establish marine reserves in suitable sites along the coastline ( <b>Refer to Plan 2 and Plan 4</b> ).	To be facilitated by WCNCB in collaboration with DEAT.  To be facilitated by DEAT and Department of Marine and Coastal Management and ODM.

### 24.6.2 GROUP 2 STRATEGIES FOR FAUNA CONSERVATION

The strategies, programmes, projects and action plans that will have no spatial implications are summarised in Table 44 below.

**Table 44: Strategies with no spatial implications for fauna conservation.**

KEY ISSUE: HABITAT CONSERVATION			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Conserve the natural habitats of the indigenous animals of the region.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.6-02	Conserve all sensitive animal habitats.	Prepare and institute management plans for all terrestrial and coastal habitats.	To be facilitated by DEAT and Department of Marine and Coastal Management and ODM.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.6-02	Conserve all sensitive animal habitats.	Divide coastal areas into utilisation zones to be used on a rotational basis. These zones should include the following: a) Fishing areas, b) Bait collection areas, c) Marine reserves, and d) Resting areas (periods).	To be facilitated by DEAT and Department of Marine and Coastal Management and ODM.
24.6-03	Control all alien animal species.	Draft and institute integrated management plans for eradication of alien animal species.	To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks and DEAT in collaboration with the ODM.
24.6-04	Locate sensitive or threatened habitats.	Institute research programmes to locate and categorise sensitive or threatened habitats.	To be facilitated by MCM, WCNCB, SANParks, STEP, SKEP, CAPE.

**KEY ISSUE: ANIMAL SPECIES DIVERSITY**

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Conserve the diversity of animals that are indigenous to the ODM at species, population and community level.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.6-05	Re-introduce species that historically occurred in the region.	Apply the existing permit systems to regulate re-introduction.	To be facilitated by WCNCB SANParks and DEAT.
24.6-06	Activate and/or support natural population dynamics to recreate historical species diversity.	Institute research programmes to determine historic biodiversity.  Rehabilitate and conserve natural animal habitats.	To be facilitated by WCNCB and SANParks.  “
24.6-07	Simulate or replicate natural disturbance regimes.	Institute research to determine natural disturbance regimes.	To be facilitated by WCNCB and SANParks, together with STEP, SKEP and CAPE.
24.6-08	Regulate artificial distribution of endemic species.	Control the stocking of rivers and dams with endemic fish species and the re-introduction of animal species.	To be facilitated by WCNCB and SANParks.
24.6-09	Regulate the utilisation of renewable animal resources.	Draft and apply management plans for utilisation of all animal species, terrestrial and marine.	To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks, MCM and landowners.
24.6-10	Institute contingency measures to mitigate negative impacts of disasters.	Institute artificial breeding programmes e.g. for endemic fish species, or abalone.  Privatise breeding of rare endemic species.	To be facilitated by MCM, WCNCB in collaboration with private landowners and NGOs.
24.6-11	Control all alien animal species.	Draft and apply integrated management plans for eradication of alien species from all river systems.	To be facilitated by WCNCB and SANParks in collaboration with private landowners and NGOs.

<b>KEY ISSUE: CONSERVATION OF RARE ENDANGERED SPECIES</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Maintain minimum viable populations of rare endemic animal species.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.6-12	Maintain population dynamics of rare endemic species.	Draft and apply integrated management systems for all rare and endemic species.  Develop and institute strategies to minimise financial loss caused by problem animals.	To be facilitated by WCNCB and SANParks in collaboration with private landowners.  WCNCB and SANParks must revise and apply policy related to problem animals.
24.6-13	Conserve all indigenous animal species.	Institute effective law enforcement.  Undertake or facilitate the following: a) Impose the applicable legislation. b) Impose Appropriate penalties for transgressions. c) Support wildlife trade monitoring programmes (refer to <b>TRAFFIC</b> , which is supported by WWFSA).	To be facilitated by MCM, WCNCB, DEAT, SANParks and the ODM.  “

<b>KEY ISSUE: SUSTAINABLE UTILISATION OF ANIMAL SPECIES</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Promote sustainable utilisation of indigenous and exotic fauna for financial benefit.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
24.6-14	Regulate utilisation of wild animal resources.	Institute and sustain monitoring programmes.	To be facilitated by MCM, WCNCB and SANParks and the relevant departments.
24.6-15	Involve communities in conservation of indigenous fauna.	Institute co-ordinated public participation in the drafting of hunting proclamations, policy and fishing quotas.  Consider the historic fishing quotas of communities when allocating quotas.  Promote partnerships between large fishing companies and local factories, fisherman and community.  Create opportunities for the broad community to benefit from utilisation of indigenous fauna.	To be facilitated by MCM and WCNCB.  To be facilitated by MCM and the relevant departments.  To be facilitated by MCM and the relevant departments.  To be undertaken by WCNCB, the Department of Agriculture, SANParks in collaboration with private landowners and relevant departments.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
24.6-15	Involve communities in sustainable use of indigenous fauna.	Undertake the following: a) Creating job opportunities for local communities (guides, skimmers, fisherman). b) Provide local training of navigators and skippers. c) Creating opportunities for selling animal products (venison, skins, bamboo). d) Providing opportunities for sustainable utilisation of 'problem' or surplus animals. e) Creating opportunities for 'catch-and-release' of endemic and exotic fish, hunting (meat and trophy), game viewing and photography.	To be undertaken by WCNCB, the Department of Agriculture, SANParks in collaboration with private landowners and relevant departments.
24.6-16	Utilise renewable resources.	Develop and institute guidelines for the development, promotion and maintenance of game farms.	To be facilitated by WCNCB, Dept. of Agriculture, SANParks in collaboration with private landowners.
24.6-17	Promote and apply principles of sustainable resource utilisation.	Institute programmes to promote wild animal production and utilisation as a viable option in marginal areas.	To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANPark and the Department of Agriculture.
24.6-18	Promote sustainable game farming.	Institute programmes to promote wild animal production and utilisation as a viable option in marginal areas.	To be facilitated by WCNCB, SANParks and the Department of Agriculture.
24.6-19	Promote sustainable abalone farming.	Institute programmes to promote abalone production and utilisation as a viable option in marginal areas.	To be facilitated by the WCNCB, SANParks and Department of Marine and Coastal Management.

### 24.6.3 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 45 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to the fauna of the ODM. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 45: Fauna: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

REPORT: OVERBERG INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (ODM, 2002)	
ISSUE: CONSERVATION OF RARE AND ENDANGERED SPECIES	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.1	The eradication of marine sources along the entire coastline by means of poaching is nationally known and is incited by several inherent problems in the fishing industry itself, by criminal elements and by poverty. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.6-13 and 24.6-15)</b>
1.2	The unauthorised activities of trawlers and other large vessels in the bays and close to the coastline are threatening the marine sources, conservation and are to the disadvantage of local communities <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 24.6-13)</b>

**25 KEY CATEGORY: HUMAN-MADE ENVIRONMENT**

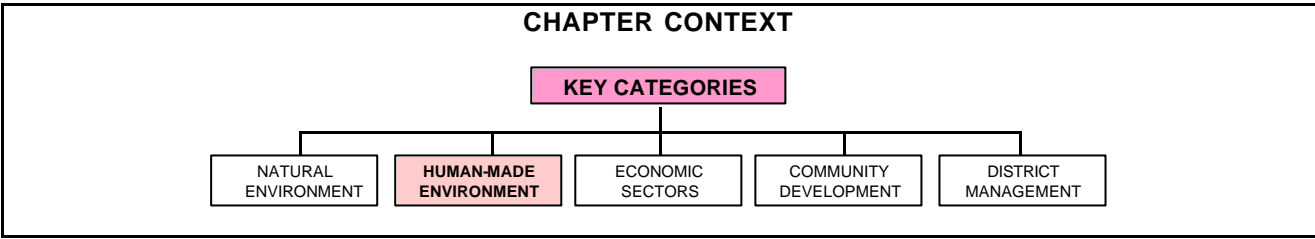


Diagram 16 below illustrates the structure of the chapters pertaining to the human-made environment.

<b>HUMAN-MADE ENVIRONMENT</b>	
<b>Chapter 25.1:</b>	<b>Cultural Resources</b>
<b>Chapter 25.2:</b>	<b>Rural development</b>
<b>Chapter 25.3:</b>	<b>Urban Development</b>

**Diagram 16: Structure of the chapters pertaining to the human-made environment.**

**25.1 CULTURAL RESOURCES**

The ODM has a rich and diverse cultural heritage and a very long record of human activity, dating back to prehistoric man (refer Chapter 6). This heritage is non-renewable and has a vital role to play in promoting reconciliation and the development of a unifying regional culture.

Cultural resources are described as those natural features and human creations in the environment that are associated with the past and present human cultural activity and history. They embody a range of values held by a community and individuals. Their importance to society lies, *inter alia*, in providing a sense of historical continuity, group and national identity. They enrich people’s existence, contribute to the quality of the environment, have recreational and educational value and potential economic benefits as tourist attractions. These resources are non-renewable ‘containers’ of information, or potential information, of human cultural activities.

The cultural heritage associated with the terrestrial areas is generally well documented and well protected in terms of the National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999). However, as is generally the case throughout the coastal zone of South Africa, the rich underwater cultural heritage of the ODM is not receiving similar attention. As a heritage resource, shipwrecks have an almost unrivalled archaeological potential, which stems from the catastrophic nature of their demise. When these vessels were lost, they took with them their cargoes, their armaments, the personal belongings of those on board and a wealth of other information about the societies which they represented, which is not preserved in any archival or historical document. They represent therefore complete working cultural units, capable of providing fresh insights about global economics and trading strategies, trade networks, market demands and the goods of exchange. Shipwrecks also touch on the social face of international trade illuminating living conditions at sea, and yield valuable

physical information about the historical development of ships and shipbuilding techniques. Furthermore, the oxygen depleted environment of underwater sites, means that organic material and artefacts are preserved underwater to a degree not found on terrestrial archaeological sites. Other sites and materials related to underwater cultural heritage that must also be borne in mind include pre-colonial fishtraps, burials (both pre-colonial and those relating to historical wrecks), non-submerged wreckage derived, etc.

### 25.1.1 VISION

#### VISION

Cultural resources are to be acknowledged and protected as the fundamental link with the historical past and a basis for planning and shaping of future urban and rural environments.

### 25.1.2 STRATEGIES

Table 46 below summarises the recommended strategies for the management of the cultural resources of the ODM.

**Table 46: Strategies with no spatial implications for the management of the cultural resources.**

KEY ISSUE: CONSERVATION OF HISTORICAL FEATURES AND MONUMENTS			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Conserve representative samples of the historical buildings and structures in the study area.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.1-01	Promote the significance of historical features.	Institute educational programmes at all levels of society.  Erect information boards/kiosks.	To be instituted by Heritage Western Cape in association with South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA).  To be instituted by Heritage Western Cape together with SAHRA & ODM.
25.1-02	Prevent the indiscriminate modification of historical structures.	Enforce existing legislation (i.e. the National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 {Act 25 of 1999}).  Institute compulsory inventories (databases) of all historical features.  Institute integrated management plans for the protection and restoration of historical structures.	To be instituted by Heritage Western Cape in collaboration with SAHRA, WCNCB and SANParks.  To be instituted by Heritage Western Cape in collaboration with SAHRA, WCNCB, SANParks, municipalities and owners.  “
25.1-03	Institute incentives for the restoration and conservation of historical features.	Utilise historical buildings and structures on a sustainable basis, e.g. reinstate the historical steamtrain at Caledon ( <i>Conservation through sustainable use</i> ).	To be instituted by Heritage Western Cape in collaboration with SAHRA, WCNCB, SANParks, municipalities and owners.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.1-03	Institute incentives for the restoration and conservation of historical features.	Market historical structures as tourism attractions (collaborate with tourism associations).	To be instituted by Heritage Western Cape in collaboration with SAHRA, WCNCB, SANParks, municipalities and owners.
25.1-04	Prevent modifications and extensions that destroy the historical character of the region.	Implement place-specific planning (refer to 'critical regionalism' described in Par. 25.2.1 below).  Formulate Architectural Guidelines for all towns and settlements.	To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with Heritage Western Cape and SAHRA.  “

#### KEY ISSUE: CONSERVATION OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL RESOURCES

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Conserve all archaeological resources on state and private land for present and future generations.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.1-05	Record all significant archaeological manifestations.	Institute research programmes to obtain reliable data of archaeological manifestations. <b>(Annexure 6</b> provides a summary of shipwrecks along the coast of the ODM).  Replicate and record rock art, shipwrecks, fishponds, historical cemeteries, etc.	To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in association with SAHRA and Archaeology Department of Universities.  “
25.1-06	Institute integrated educational programmes at all levels of society.	Prepare and distribute brochures and pamphlets.  Institute educational programmes on the significance of archaeological resources.	To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in association with SAHRA, WCNCB and SANParks.  To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in association with SAHRA.
25.1-07	Control human impact at archaeological sites.	Institute effective permit systems to control access.  Erect barriers and pathways / board walks to regulate movement at sensitive sites.	To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in association with SAHRA, WCNCB and SANParks.  “
25.1-08	Promote sustainable utilisation of archaeological resources.	Develop and institute educational programmes to promote archaeological resources as an integral element of wilderness and other natural experiences.	To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in association with SAHRA, WCNCB and SANParks.
25.1-09	Develop and market unique regional cultural-historical tourist packages.	Establish interpretative displays in museums and tourist / information offices.	To be facilitated by the ODM, WCNCB, SANParks in collaboration with municipalities and tourism structures.



STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.1-09	Develop and market unique regional cultural-historical tourist packages.	Sell rock art paintings and prints copied from original rock art or any other historical manifestation.  Establish scenic routes for cultural landscapes.	To be facilitated by regional and local tourism structures.  To be facilitated by the local municipalities in collaboration with Heritage Western Cape and SAHRA.

#### KEY ISSUE: OTHER CULTURE-HISTORICAL RESOURCES

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Conserve all 'intangible' cultural resources, such as oral history, language, place names, social activities, and human habits.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.1-10	Conserve and transfer traditional knowledge and experience to younger generations.	Develop and institute educational programmes.	To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in association with SAHRA, WCNCB, SANParks and local communities.
25.1-11	Create direct financial incentives for conserving 'intangible' cultural resources.	Market historic habits and trades as tourist attraction e.g. water mill and open air ovens in Genadendal.  Market locally-manufactured products to tourists, e.g. Kapula Candles, Suurbraak chairs.  Create employment opportunities for people with local knowledge (e.g. guides, field rangers).	To be facilitated by regional and local tourism structures.  "  "
25.1-12	Conserve the historical resources of all the communities of the ODM.	Establish and maintain community museums.  Encourage communities to donate historical items to museums.	To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in association with SAHRA, WCNCB, SANParks and local communities.  "
25.1-13	Retain all acceptable historic names.	Collaborate with the National Place Names Commission.	To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in association with SAHRA, the ODM, WCNCB, SANParks and local communities.

<b>KEY ISSUE NO. 25.1.3d: UNDERWATER CULTURAL RESOURCES</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Conserve all underwater cultural resources throughout the coastal zone of the ODM.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
25.1-14	Institute appropriate conservation measures to conserve underwater cultural resources.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) The finite and non-renewable nature of cultural heritage resources must be acknowledge, and effective policy and planning mechanisms must be put in place to ensure that these resources receive appropriate protection.</li> <li>b) Protection and management of underwater cultural heritage must be incorporated into coastal planning and development processes.</li> <li>c) Underwater cultural heritage resources must be identified and assessed by qualified specialists during survey programmes on which management policy will be based.</li> <li>d) Measures to control and mitigate the impact of both commercial and recreational human activities on underwater cultural heritage resources, must be drawn up where they don't exist, and existing policies effectively implemented.</li> </ul>	To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in collaboration with SAHRA and the ODM.
25.1-15	Protect underwater cultural resources against development impact.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Applications for development rights must be subject to review by professional archaeologists prior to any approval being considered or issued by the planning authority.</li> <li>b) Marine and coastal developers should acknowledge the potential scientific value of underwater archaeological material, and make every effort to report promptly any unexpected discoveries encountered.</li> <li>c) Developers and archaeologists alike should be aware of the legislation pertaining to the protection of underwater cultural heritage.</li> </ul>	To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in collaboration with SAHRA and the ODM.

<p>25.1-15</p>	<p>Protect underwater cultural resources against development impact.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d) A broad consultative process should be encouraged, and at the earliest opportunity developers should seek professional archaeological advice to establish whether development would be likely to affect sites of maritime archaeological interest.</li> <li>e) SAHRA's Shipwreck Database should be consulted to establish whether any wrecks are likely to occur in the area to be developed.</li> <li>f) A developer should consult the archaeologist or historian at the nearest museum. The museum will provide the developer with the name and address of a suitably qualified and accredited maritime archaeologist to conduct an underwater survey.</li> <li>g) If underwater heritage material is identified and will be negatively impacted on by the development, the developer may either change the position of the development to avoid impacting on the site, or hire a professional maritime archaeologist to mitigate the damage.</li> <li>h) Mitigation must be done well in advance of development to avoid costly delays and to allow, wherever possible, for sites to be preserved rather than destroyed. Such mitigation takes place in terms of the 'user pays' principle, and would normally involve detailed mapping of the site and recovery of wreckage and artefacts so that a representative sample is saved from destruction.</li> </ul>	<p>To be facilitated by Heritage Western Cape in collaboration with SAHRA and the ODM.</p>
----------------	--	---	--

**25.1.3 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS**

Table 47 on the following page summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to the management of the cultural resources of the municipal area. These comments and recommendation are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 47: Cultural Resources: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

<b>REPORT 1: OVERBERG INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (ODM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: CONSERVATION OF HISTORICAL FEATURES AND MONUMENTS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.1	Cultural heritages such as old buildings in towns like Napier and in historical settlements (Elim, Genadendal, Suurbraak, Kassiesbaai in Waenhuiskrans) are deteriorating because the owners are too poor to maintain or restore their properties properly. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.1-03 and 25.1-04)</b>
<b>ISSUE: CONSERVATION OF HISTORICAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL RESOURCES</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.2	Archaeological sites along the coast are threatened by urban development and little time and opportunity to do a proper archaeological investigation. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.4-05 to 25.1-09)</b>
1.3	The destruction of archaeological sites also means the destruction of the relics and traces of the lifestyle and presence of the Khoi and San groups, while it is their history that is poorly recorded and relatively unknown. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.4-05 to 25.1-09)</b>

## 25.2 RURAL DEVELOPMENT

Development inevitably modifies the environment. It is important that a certain level of change or modification must be accepted. This unavoidable change can, however, be mitigated or controlled to predetermined '*limits of acceptable change*'. To achieve this, all landowners/developers need to take responsibility for the maintenance of the ecological, sociological, aesthetic and cultural qualities of their respective properties and of the bioregion as a whole.

This requires responsible land ownership based on the following fundamental principles:

- a) **Owning is belonging:** The place to begin conceiving land ownership is to realise that land parcels are inherently connected and that each parcel, and hence each owner, belongs to a larger community. A person is unlikely to use land responsibly without an awareness of the seen and unseen links, the inevitable spillovers and externalities.
- b) **Embracing our ignorance:** In environmental management a prominent place is needed for human ignorance. Land ownership should include the obligation to use the land humbly, within the limits set by the land - limits that are often badly understood. The correlative rule is an acceptance of liability for land degradation and a pledge to do what is possible to restore it and of finding ways to avoid problems before they arise.
- c) **Sensitivity to place:** Given the complexity of nature and the paramount need to promote community well-being, land use norms must stimulate an attention to place and foster a willingness to tailor land uses to the characteristics and possibilities of each tract. Land uses must be set, not just by what is economically and physically possible in a place, but by the role of the tract of land in the surrounding ecosystem.
- d) **Promoting local knowledge:** Good land use is best understood as an art, tailored to the uniqueness of each place and sensitive to the possibilities and limits set by nature. Local knowledge is often tied to the terrain, soils, climate, hydrology, biodiversity, and economy of a place, arising by cautious, trail-and-error methods that environmentalists have come to call *adaptive management*.
- e) **Landscape-level planning:** Good ownership will include the owner's participation in landscape-level planning. Land health cannot revive without plans that cover large areas, such as watersheds, ecosystems or bioregions, (i.e bioregional planning).

The development and maintenance of essential services and infrastructure such as roads, electricity, running water, and communication systems should be considered and prioritised in a bioregional context. This is to ensure that (a) all the people of the ODM have equitable access to such services (refer to the vision statement), and (b) that the available funds are spent in the most cost-effective manner.

Carrying capacity is a critical element in determining appropriate development density and scale. Due to the complexity of social and ecological carrying capacity, the process of determining development densities is in itself rather complex and often subjective.

Determining development scale has been based upon a rules-based approach that largely ignored place-specific principles such as those promoted by the concept of 'critical regionalism' (refer to Par. 25.2.1 below).

This document promotes a place-specific approach to environmental planning, design, and management, and decision-making that is based on identified values and environmental

ethics. This approach is largely an antipodal to the rules-based approach, which has given rise to settlement patterns that are largely unacceptable.

In this regard, there is general consensus that past settlement patterns and lifestyles cannot be allowed to continue. There seems to be general consensus that past settlement patterns and the consumption of natural resources are unsustainable and that the settlement patterns and practices of the past are destroying the land.

A fundamental paradigm shift is required in order to ensure that past mistakes are not repeated and that the unique quality of the ODM and its historic settlements are not lost in the future.

It is imperative that solutions be found on the Category B municipal level in respect of, *inter alia*, issues such as appropriate development densities. It is envisaged that the various Category B Municipalities in collaboration with the ODM will provide inputs in the latter regard that will be put forward as definite principles and guidelines. Such principles will be based on the concept of 'critical regionalism' described in Par. 25.2.1 below, with specific reference to the principle of a 'sense of limits'.

The planning task includes the rediscovery of the nature and qualities of places as totalities and the meaning our places have (or could have) for individuals and communities. There is a need to avoid the propensity to isolate single objects from their contexts and avoid focusing on a functional rules-based planning system only.

### **25.2.1 'CRITICAL REGIONALISM' - A BASIS FOR PLACE-SPECIFIC PLANNING**

It is proposed that the planning and design principles known as '**critical regionalism**' (Kelbaugh, 1997) be adopted to provide a basis for planning, design and development throughout the ODM.

Through 'critical regionalism' this document promotes a return to the development of high-quality settlements that comply with the definition of '*a unique sustainable man-made environment which is in harmony with the natural environment that 'contains' it and which demonstrates the five guiding principles of 'critical regionalism'*'. Such quality is often dependent upon a specific 'sense of togetherness' and character that requires a specific scale and density.

Critical regionalism constitutes a sensory understanding and appreciation of the environment and its component 'things', and is therefore a very complex concept to apply. It is based on five basic principles that should guide the planning, design and management of development, namely (Kelbaugh, 1997):

#### **a) Sense of Place**

'Sense of place' is described as the '*degree to which a place can be clearly perceived and mentally differentiated and structured in time and space by its residents, and the degree to which that mental structure connects with their values and concepts*' (Lynch, 1998).

In evaluating a sense of place, one needs to recognise that there are various 'components of sense' that, together, provide a particular environmental quality for the observer. 'Sense of place' is based upon the *sensed quality* of the unique 'components of sense' of a

particular place, including its identity, character, structure, local climate, topography, vegetation, building materials, building practices, and local authenticity.

In practice, in the preparation and consideration of development applications (including architecture and placement of new infrastructure), it is important to ensure that the above 'components of sense' are incorporated into the planning and design. For example, this implies that any development within the natural environment should *inter alia* reflect elements of the traditional vernacular of the area, make use of local natural building materials, and reflect a strong sense of local authenticity.

### **b) Sense of History**

Historical precedents are a good point of departure when planning, designing and rehabilitating new places and existing areas (Kelbaugh, 1997). It is imperative that the local history, traditions and values be thoroughly studied as part of any planning process and that the planning and design of both the cultural and the natural environment should reflect these dimensions.

The Western Cape and its people have a particularly rich history that needs to form the basis of development and land-use in any area. Developments should reflect an appreciation for the history, culture and traditions of the local people and build on the historical precedents presented by existing high quality settlements.

In this regard, it is noted that any architectural type that has stood the test of time must be doing something right in terms of responding to climate, social and cultural needs, tradition, and economy, and should, therefore, be worth copying (Kelbaugh, 1997).

### **c) Sense of Craft**

Critical regionalism builds upon a return to craftsmanship and avoids construction types, which have become less sustainable and less appropriate over most of the past century (Kelbaugh, 1997).

The unique architecture and settlement structure that characterise traditional settlements in the Western Cape, are some of its most unique features. These characteristics and the craftsmanship of the local people evolved in response to the challenges of nature and the needs of the historic people of the area. In order to create *places* where humans can live with dignity and pride, it will be necessary to revive and retain the traditional craftsmanship and to ensure that an appropriate 'sense of craft' is reflected in all development.

### **d) Sense of Nature**

Nature is a good model for design because it holds the key to vitality and sustainability. It is recognised that architects, landscape planners, and urban planners can learn from the sophistication of ecological systems and that these can fulfil a meaningful role to protect ecosystems, natural processes, and the symbiosis between organisms and their environment (Kelbaugh, 1997). This can be achieved through appropriate study and developing an appreciation for the unique environmental values of a place before any planning, design and development is undertaken. Any development is to reflect an appreciation for the unique natural attributes of the environment and respond to the dominant local forces of nature.

This implies that in any development there should be presumption in favour of conservation and that a premium will be placed on the conservation of natural resources, wildlife and landscape. Materials for new development should, for example, be obtained from sustainable sources, and in the design of buildings the use of energy consumption should be minimised. In addition, the following principles should be incorporated into the planning and management of any development:

- (i) Minimise use of the four generic resources, namely energy, water, land and materials.
- (ii) Maximise resource re-use and/or recycling.
- (iii) Use renewable resources in preference to non-renewable resources.
- (iv) Minimise air, land and water pollution.
- (v) Create a healthy, non-toxic environment.
- (vi) Maintain and restore the Earth's vitality and ecological diversity.
- (vii) Minimise damage to sensitive landscapes, including scenic, cultural, historical, and architectural aspects.

### **(e) Sense of Limits**

There is a need for physical and temporal boundaries to frame and limit human places and activities. There is also a need for human scale in the built environment. Kelbaugh (1997) states that *'the sense of limits also pertains to a need for psychological boundaries – ones that make life more understandable and negotiable'*.

In order to achieve the above, strategies need to be formulated and implemented to prevent the unlimited urban sprawl that characterises some of the urban and peri-urban areas. Such strategies need to reflect the *ability of the natural environment* to sustain development and consumptive land-use. In addition, such strategies need to ensure that the development density of human settlements is such that it would facilitate the development of places where people can live with dignity and pride.

## **25.2.2 APPLICATION OF CRITICAL REGIONALISM**

It is recognised that municipalities, landowners, the general public, and even professional designers will require guidance pertaining to what is considered as consistent with the principles of critical regionalism. For this purpose, supplementary design guidelines will be required in respect of specific areas or regions within the province. These detailed guidelines will have to be formulated by the municipalities in respect of the places under their jurisdiction through, in particular, intensive studies and extensive I&AP consultation.

The application of critical regionalism, for example, implies that all development applications must be evaluated against the five guiding principles on which the approach is founded and the detailed supplementary guidelines in respect of specific places or sites. If any development proposal is considered to be inconsistent with these principles, the relevant authority must inform the applicant about the nature and extent of the inconsistency and the avenues to be explored to find appropriate solutions, or, alternatively, that non-development is viewed as the most appropriate option.

This implies that the authorities and designers will be required to understand the principles of critical regionalism and play a much more creative role in facilitating the restoration of the existing human-made environment and the development of high quality places in accordance with these principles. In this regard, it is imperative that the Overberg District Municipality and the various Category B Municipalities should show the way by developing



institutional capacity to apply the principles of critical regionalism. This should be achieved through the SDFs.

### 25.2.3 A SPATIAL FRAMEWORK FOR PLACE-SPECIFIC PLANNING

As stated in Chapter 17, all development in the ODM is to be regulated in terms of the SPCs illustrated by Plan 2. As described in Chapter 18, the SPC designation was based upon a value system and code of ethics. These values, subsequently, serve as a basis for all decision-making regarding the location of development and, together with the principles of 'critical regionalism' described above, provide guidance in respect of the scale and format of any development.

As stated above, the ODM and the various Category B Municipalities are to take responsibility for continual monitoring of compliance on project level with the ethical framework described in Chapter 18. The ethical principles are thus presented to planners and project managers as an enabling framework that needs to be further interpreted and refined in planning, design, management and operational terms. The aim in this regard is to integrate the principles of environmental ethics and sustainable living in the municipal area into a dynamic living and evolving practice, characterised by mutual exchange of ideas between local role-players and appropriate facilitators, as well as continual learning from experience.

**Table 48: Development guidelines in accordance with the SPCs** (From: Manual for Bioregional Planning in the Western Cape {PGWC, 2003}).

SPC	TYPE OF DEVELOPMENT	CONDITION
<b>A</b>	a) No development allowed.	
<b>B</b>	a) Small-scale resort development. b) Infrastructure required for research.	a) The development site must be determined by appropriate EIA. b) The identified development site must be rezoned to SPC D prior to any development. c) Must be undertaken in accordance with site-specific design and planning guidelines. d) An SMA is to be established as a condition of approval.
<b>C</b>	a) Agricultural development.	a) Only agricultural development allowed in accordance with appropriate EIA. b) To be reclassified to SPC A, B, D, E and SPC F for any use other than agriculture. c) An SMA should be considered as a condition of approval.
<b>D</b>	a) All urban-related developments providing for SPC D.a – D.i.	a) Must be undertaken in accordance with site-specific design and planning guidelines.
<b>E</b>	a) Full spectrum of industrial developments that occur in the region (SPC E.a – E.d).	a) Must be undertaken in accordance with site-specific design and planning guidelines. b) All industry must be regulated and managed in accordance with ISO 14001 standards.
<b>F</b>	a) Surface infrastructure and buildings that are required for effective transport and communication and support the economic base of the bioregion (SPC F.a – F.k).	a) Must be undertaken in accordance with site-specific design and planning guidelines.

## 25.2.4 VISION FOR RURAL DEVELOPMENT

### VISION

Creating in an environmentally sustainable manner, the infrastructure and services that are essential for the development of the rural communities of the ODM.

## 25.2.5 GROUP 1 STRATEGIES FOR RURAL DEVELOPMENT

Table 49 below summarises the strategies with spatial implications pertaining to rural development in the ODM.

**Table 49: Strategies with spatial implications for rural development.**

KEY ISSUE: ESSENTIAL RURAL INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT		
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Provide the infrastructure and services required for improving the quality of life of the people living in the rural areas of the region.
STRATEGY	PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION	
25.2-01	Institute effective roads upgrading and maintenance.	<p>Upgrade the roads indicated by <b>Plan 5</b>, namely:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Klipdale–Napier</li> <li>b) Pearly Beach–L'Agulhas</li> <li>c) Bredasdorp–Elim–Buffeljagtstrand</li> <li>d) Bredasdorp via Wydgeleë and Potberg to the pont at Malgas</li> <li>e) Entrance roads to Klipdale and Proteem</li> <li>f) Wolfgat and Elandskloof</li> <li>g) Grootbos Road</li> <li>h) Van Der Stel Pass between Botrivier and Villiersdorp</li> <li>i) Kleinbaai–Danger Point</li> <li>j) Hermanus–Caledon via Hemel-en-Aarde Valley</li> <li>k) L'Agulhas–Struisbaai</li> <li>l) Malgas–Swellendam</li> <li>m) Villiersdorp–Riviersonderend via Genadendal and Greyton</li> <li>n) Infanta–Grasrug, 600 metre pass Infanta Park and three streets within the town</li> <li>o) Viljoenshoop</li> <li>p) Swellendam - Infanta</li> </ul> <p><b>(Refer to Strategy B5.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Tarr the junction road between Gansbaai and the southernmost tip of Africa via Baardskeerdersbos and Elim as indicated by <b>Plan 5</b>. <b>(Refer to Strategy B5.3, Overberg IDP)</b></p>
		<p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the Department of Transport and the South African National Roads Agency.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the Department of Transport and the South African National Roads Agency.</p>

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.2-02	Change the character and nature of main roads and impose traffic calming measures.	Develop a strategy for the alteration of the R44 between Hermanus / Kleinmond intersection and Pringle Bay.	To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the Department of Transport and the South African National Roads Agency.

### 25.2.6 GROUP 2 STRATEGIES FOR RURAL DEVELOPMENT

Table 50 below summarises the strategies with no spatial implications pertaining to rural development in the ODM.

**Table 50: Strategies with no spatial implications for rural development.**

KEY ISSUE: ESSENTIAL RURAL INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Provide all the infrastructure and services that are essential for improving the quality of life of people living in the rural areas.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.2-03	Ensure application of place-specific planning and design guidelines for rural development.	Develop detailed guidelines in respect of the principles of 'critical regionalism'.  Apply principles of 'critical regionalism' in each development.  The upgrading of farm houses should receive attention.	To be undertaken by ODM and local communities in collaboration with community forums.  To be facilitated by the ODM.  “
25.2-04	Co-ordinate institutional functions to prevent duplication and facilitate effective use of available financial and other resources.	Establish effective communication and collaboration between the various authorities in the ODM.	To be facilitated by the ODM.
25.2-05	Establish partnerships between government and the private sector for funding upgrading of infrastructure and services.	Institute a programme for encouraging the private sector to collectively fund essential capital works.	To be facilitated by the ODM.
25.2-06	Develop / upgrade infrastructure and services to accommodate community needs.	Provide adequate infrastructure and services for on-farm settlements and farm nodes.  Conduct a survey on the current infrastructure and service needs in rural areas.	To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with relevant land owners.  To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with Category B Municipalities.

<b>KEY ISSUE: DEVELOPMENT PLANNING</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Safeguard the ecological, social and aesthetic qualities of the natural environment through appropriate environmental planning.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
25.2-07	Ensure effective enforcement of legislation and planning decisions.	Apply the applicable legislation, namely the Physical Planning Act, 1991 (Act 125 of 1991), WCPDA, 1999 (Act 7 of 1999), National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act 18 of 1998) and the ECA, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989).  Impose appropriate penalties for indiscretions.  Implement an integrated sustainable rural development strategy in collaboration with a rural development policy, which is based on the principles of 'critical regionalism'.	To be facilitated by the Provincial Government of the Western Cape (PGWC), the ODM and local municipalities.  “  “
25.2-08	Increase environmental awareness at all levels of society.	Institute educational programmes for decision-makers, planners, landowners, and the broad public.	To be facilitated by PGWC, the ODM and local municipalities.

<b>KEY ISSUE: ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure appropriate environmental control in all rural development.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
25.2-09	Monitor all aspects and influences of development to identify and rectify negative impacts.	Conduct a baseline study to determine the current situation with regards to informal settlements.  Formulate clear policy and guidelines to address needs of informal settlers for housing and other basic services.  Institute compulsory monitoring and environmental auditing (refer to ISO 14001 standards and procedures).  Appoint independent professional agencies to do environmental control.	To be facilitated by the ODM in respect of each settlement.  To be facilitated by the ODM in respect of each settlement.  To be facilitated by PGWC, ODM, and local municipalities in collaboration with WCNCB, SANParks.  “
25.2-09	Impose similar environmental and legislative requirements on all development. <b>(Refer to Strategy E3, Overberg IDP)</b>	All developers (including the agricultural sector) must conform to statutory environmental requirements.  Establish, as a condition of approval for development, a <b>Special Management Area (SMA)</b> as described in Chapter 22.	To be facilitated by the developer in collaboration with the ODM, the relevant state departments.  “

<b>KEY ISSUE: ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Limit negative impacts on the ecological, social and aesthetic environment to acceptable levels.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
25.2-11	Regulate the construction of power lines, roads and other infrastructure.	Institute compulsory EIA and IEM procedures prior to construction of major structures.  Draft integrated management plans for powerlines, boxes, etc (e.g. fire prevention and bird protection).	To be facilitated by the ODM, the local municipalities and the relevant state departments.  “
25.2-12	Regulate golf estate developments in accordance with place-specific planning and design guidelines and principles of sustainable development.	Evaluate establishment of golf estates in accordance with the principles of sustainable development, ‘critical regionalism’ and statutory environmental regulations.  Investigate the role that golf estates play in social, economic, institutional and environmental context versus other types of development.  Investigate the carrying capacity of the environment to accommodate golf estates.	To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the local municipalities.  “  “

<b>KEY ISSUE: POLLUTION</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Regulate waste disposal to prevent pollution of the natural environment and natural resources.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
25.2-13	Regulate waste disposal.	Draft and institute compulsory pollution management plans for rural settlements and farms.  Promote recycling of waste.  Establish and manage central waste disposal sites.  Institute management plans for the disposal of sewerage and storm water effluent.	To be facilitated by ODM and local municipalities in collaboration with DEAT.  “  To be facilitated by ODM and local municipalities in collaboration with DEAT.  “

## 25.2.7 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 51 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to rural development. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 51: Rural Development: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

<b>REPORT 1: OVERBERG IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (ODM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: ESSENTIAL RURAL INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.1	Several key tourist routes are not tarred, while tour busses and rental vehicles are either not allowed to use gravel roads or premiums are loaded. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-01 and 25.2-02)</b>
1.2	Although emphasise is put on the tarring of the road between Gansbaai and the southernmost tip of Africa via Baardskeerdersbos and Elim, the following roads are also regarded as strategic and should eventually also be tarred: (a) Swellendam / Infanta (b) Hermanus / Caledon via Hemel-en-Aarde (c) Villiersdorp / Riviersonderend via Genandendal and Greyton (d) Viljoenshoop <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-01)</b>
1.3	Rural communities in Klipdale, Protem, Wydgeleë (Ouplaas), Buffeljagtstrand, Elim and Tesselaarsdal are further marginalized as a result of the poor condition and maintenance of dirt and gravel roads. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-01 and 25.2-02)</b>
1.4	The promotion of tarring projects, with emphasis on the contribution it can make towards the enhancement of people's quality of living, economic development and prevention of crime. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-01 and 25.2-02)</b>
1.5	Some farmers are willing to contribute on a 50/50 basis for housing for their workers in or adjacent to existing towns. The upgrading of existing farmhouses should also receive attention. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-03 and 25.2-06)</b>
<b>ISSUE: ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.6	Red tape, poor co-ordination, politicising and wasting of time in the handling of applications for development should be avoid at all levels of government. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-07 and 25.2-08)</b>
1.7	Officials handling development applications should be trained to supply developers with the correct information from the start. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-07 and 25.2-08)</b>
1.8	Because the provision of infrastructure and proper service delivery will be expensive and in most cases almost impossible, the establishment of small 'agricultural towns' is not favoured. Rural settlements such as Tesselaarsdal are clearly illustrative of the suffering inflicted on the inhabitants of such under-developed areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-07 and 25.2-08)</b>

<b>ISSUE: ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.9	Manners in which various institutions can share radio masts and transmitting stations should be considered in order to prevent numerous masts from having an adverse environmental impact. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-11)</b>
<b>ISSUE: POLLUTION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.10	Attention should be given to the large number of septic tanks in coastal towns and on rivers, which are threatening and endangering the underground water sources and the river systems in the ODM. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-09, 25.2-10 and 25.2-13)</b>

<b>REPORT 2: THEEWATERSKLOOF IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Theewaterskloof Municipality, 2002)	
<b>ISSUE: ESSENTIAL RURAL INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.1	Upgrading and tarring of roads, e.g. the Hemel and Aarde road. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-01, 25.3-18 and 25.3-19)</b>
2.2	Improve public transport and road network in rural areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.2-02, 25.3-18 and 25.3-19)</b>
2.3	Improve security in rural areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>

## 25.3 URBAN DEVELOPMENT

The urban environment of the ODM has immensely important spatial implications. It is, therefore, of paramount importance, that an 'urban development strategy', be drafted and implemented within the context set by this document.

The primary objective of urban planning and development should be to shape the human-made environment in order to enhance the quality of life of the habitant communities. Requirements for sustainable urban development include the following:

- a) **Integrate urban and rural planning** (align urban land use planning with bioregional planning).
- b) **Contain urban sprawl** (urban sprawl implies higher per capita cost of providing essential services and loss of valuable agricultural or natural land).
- c) **Restore and maintain specific character** (urban areas must reflect the culture-historical character of the area and its people and unique local land uses).

It is important that urban planning and development should take into account the basic requirements of the natural environment. The Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989) provides general policy guidelines to prevent environmental degradation due to urban development. These guidelines include the following:

- a) A holistic environmental approach will be an integral element of all facets of urban planning and development. This includes elements of both the constructed environment and the surrounding natural environment, with due consideration of socio-economic factors. Consultation with all interested and affected parties is a fundamental element of this policy.
- b) A compact and functionally more effective urban structure will be the ideal, with the emphasis still falling on orderly spatial development to facilitate the optimal use of available land. Buffer zones should be created between residential and industrial areas.
- c) All development will be planned and managed so as to eliminate all forms of pollution where possible.
- d) Environmental know-how and involvement with local communities will be promoted to ensure acceptable circumstances and standards for community life.

An evaluation of urban space in the region reveals that many urban settlements are devoid of the endearing qualities that characterise historic settlements. The primary negative characteristics are the following:

- a) A general lack of charming urban streets, square buildings and places, which provide the characteristic structure of historic places.
- b) Existing buildings generally do not play any positive role in giving the urban space a particular quality. Institutional buildings, such as churches, municipal offices and business buildings are scattered throughout the towns without any evidence of an understanding of the important role such buildings should play in providing status to the various types of urban space and how they should help define and shape specific types of public places (e.g. town squares and streets).
- c) There is generally no evidence of a well-defined town or settlement border that provides a recognisable inside-outside relationship and a sense of enclosure.
- d) The urban edges of the settlements and their main entrances are, generally, ill-defined and weak, without a sense of a 'gateway'.



- e) With the exception of some attempts to copy and clone 'regional building styles', there is little evidence of successful integration of the characteristic qualities of the built heritage of the region into new development.

As stated above, there is a widespread propensity to emphasise the role of functional, physical and biological factors in the formulation of policy and strategies, whilst the **existential meaning** that people attach to their places and the values and norms that underpin such meanings are being neglected.

### 25.3.1 VISION

#### VISION

Establish a safe, healthy and aesthetically pleasing urban environment, with the architectural and spatial character depicting the historical and cultural background of the habitant communities.

### 25.3.2 OBJECTIVES AND GUIDELINES FOR URBAN DEVELOPMENT

In respect of regulating development, the overriding objective of the ODM is to achieve the following:

- a) **Order:** 'Order' concerns the logical, comprehensible arrangement of separate elements, including the disposition and relationship of one element to another.
- b) **Beauty:** 'Beauty' is the quality that delights the senses or exalts the mind, and the aesthetics and outward visual impression of a place or feature.
- c) **Scale:** 'Scale' concerns the proportion of elements to the human figure, which give a sense of well-being and comfortable spatial relationship to the environment.

Planning and design guidelines should always be prepared for specific places and should be a product of a specific planning and design process and strategies based on agreed-upon criteria and principles. It needs to be recognised that urban spatial design is an environmental art and that the beauty of urban places is measured by how well the components fit into the larger spatial structure (Trancik, 1986).

A key aspect of sustainable development is the manner in which settlements are shaped and spatially orientated within the environment.

In this regard, Moughtin (1997) states that principles of *sustainable development* would include clear objectives for a framework of urban design that would emphasise conservation of both the natural and built environment. In the building / development process there should be presumptions in favour of conservation, and a premium should be placed on the conservation of natural resources, wildlife and landscapes.

There is a strong need to structure and restructure the **built environment** in a way that promotes sustainable development. In this regard, the following aspects, drawn from the

views of Moughtin (1997), are summarised below. Municipalities will be required to actively promote these aspects and principles through *inter alia* their IDPs, SDFs and SDPs.

### **25.3.2.1 ENERGY AND THE BUILT ENVIRONMENT**

*Traditions of vernacular architecture have many lessons for those seeking sustainable forms in urban planning and design, and that there is much to commend in the common sense approach to energy conservation and environmental protection practised by many builders in the past (Moughtin, 1997). In this regard, six planning principles were identified, which would contribute towards promoting sustainable development:*

#### **Principle No 1**

The first principle is that priority should be given to the conservation and reuse of buildings, infrastructure and materials.

#### **Principle No 2**

The second principle refers to the use of local regional building materials for construction work. Where possible, it is preferable to use materials requiring low inputs of energy in fabrication, transportation to the site, and in the construction process itself. Preference should be given to materials, which are labour intensive, rather than energy intensive in their extraction, dressing and erection.

#### **Principle No 3**

The third principle is to avoid materials that cause environmental damage leaving behind unsightly spoil heaps and quarries. The worst effects of such damage, when it occurs, should be mitigated, and new buildings should be linked with tree planting schemes in an effort to offset some of the effects of pollution caused by the manufacturing of building materials.

#### **Principle No 4**

The fourth principle is to relate the building to the local environment - to reduce the amount of external wall surface; to orientate the building towards the sun; to organise the interior of the building so that a buffer of storage rooms and other similar accommodation faces south, and to arrange for conservatories or sun spaces to be sited on the north, east or west facades.

#### **Principle No 5**

The fifth principle is to design buildings for flexibility so that a mix of uses can be accommodated under the same roof and so that floor plans are robust, in the sense that they can be adapted for different uses during the building's lifetime.

#### **Principle No 6**

Buildings should be located on public transport routes and with close connections to other parts of the existing urban infrastructure and, where possible, buildings should take the form of infill within existing development or on 'brown land', that is, on previously used land or wasteland.

### 25.3.2.2 SUSTAINABLE TRANSPORT

Transport, in addition to bringing benefits to society, involves large costs. Costs, such as pollution and noise are incurred directly or indirectly by the users or by those passively affected by developments, whilst other costs are the result of environmental damage (Moughtin, 1997).

*'Many of these costs, particularly from road building programmes and the resulting increase in traffic, have fallen on the community rather than the developers of the transport system or its users. The price signals, such as road construction costs and cost of petrol, given by the transport market, because they ignore environmental costs, mislead the users into believing that personal mobility is cheaper than it really is. The depressed costs have therefore resulted in transport decisions harmful to the community'* (Moughtin, 1997).

The aim of planning policies and urban design solutions must be to *reduce* the need for movement and to recognise that planning and designing urban forms for the reduced need for mobility, is a longer term solution to the problems facing society.

### 25.3.2.3 URBAN METAPHOR

Similar to any organic organism, city health is maintained only as long as the balance of its components is maintained. *'Excess growth is managed by the propagation of new colonies. The organic model for the city is most in tune with the concept of sustainable development when, in particular, it takes on the attributes of ecology.'* This would occur where there is a diversity in its components, which maintains the balance between the energy inputs and outputs including recycling, waste reduction and pollution levels (Moughtin, 1997).

*'According to this model of the city, decay is apparent in settlements when this delicate balance breaks down and excessive growth occurs or when self-healing ceases the result can be likened to cancer or uncontrolled growth'* (Moughtin, 1997).

### 25.3.2.4 URBAN FORM

Against the background of the key aspects of urban form, namely the *linear city*, the *gridiron plan* and the *highly centralised* settlement, it is contended that each may have a role to play in achieving sustainable development, and that much will depend on the circumstances in which each form is used. A public transport strategy and an ecological strategy are probably the two most important factors in determining urban form. *'Such settlements, to be effective, should be of a size determined by comfortable walking distances between activities in the settlement'* (Moughtin, 1997).

It is a priority for the immediate future, to make existing urban areas more sustainable, and to seek ways in which the great suburban belts of development, which encircle most settlements can be made less energy-intensive in terms of mobility while maintaining a good quality of life for those living there.

### 25.3.3 STRATEGIES FOR URBAN DEVELOPMENT

The guidelines and strategies recommended in respect of rural development (refer to Chapter 25.2.5 above) generally also apply to urban development and supplement the strategies listed below.

Table 52 below summarises general strategies for the development and management of the SPC D and E areas in the region.

**Table 52: Strategies for urban development.**

<b>KEY ISSUE: ESSENTIAL URBAN DEVELOPMENT</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Provide the infrastructure and services required for improving the quality of life of the people living in the urban areas of the region.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
25.3-01	Regulate quality, scale and format of urban development.	Develop place-specific design guidelines for each urban area (refer to principles of 'critical regionalism').	To be undertaken by the ODM for settlements under its jurisdiction.
25.3-02	Limit future urban industrial development to the most suitable sites as determined by the availability of resources, existing infrastructure and services.	Prepare an 'Urban Development Strategy' that will facilitate urban development.  Undertake research to determine development potential and carrying capacity of each settlement.	To be facilitated by the ODM.
25.3-03	Install appropriate communication infrastructure in the most suitable locations.	Investigate the upgrading of communication and information technology systems throughout the municipal area.	To be facilitated by Telkom and the ODM in collaboration with applicable service providers.

<b>KEY ISSUE: ESSENTIAL URBAN DEVELOPMENT</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Develop essential infrastructure and facilities to accommodate the aspirations, needs and pressures of present and future industries and dependent communities.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
25.3-04	Provide infrastructure and services to accommodate bulk community needs.	Develop adequate parking areas with toilet facilities for peak periods (e.g. concentration of farm workers over weekends and month-ends).	To be undertaken by ODM in respect of each settlement.
25.3-05	Provide infrastructure and services to accommodate community-housing needs. <b>(Refer to Strategy B4, Overberg IDP)</b>	Undertake public participation to determine community-housing needs by means of a complete needs survey on Municipal B level. <b>(Refer to Strategy B4.1, Overberg IDP)</b>  Investigate availability of appropriate land for temporary informal housing in order to control settlement of immigrants.	To be undertaken by ODM and Category B municipalities in respect of each settlement.  To be undertaken by ODM and Category B municipalities in respect of each settlement.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-05	Provide infrastructure and services to accommodate community-housing needs. <b>(Refer to Strategy B4, Overberg IDP)</b>	Investigate availability of appropriate land for development of decent housing.  Undertake the upgrading of informal settlements in phases.  Attention should be given to providing housing for farm workers in or adjacent towns, e.g. Strandveld and Nuweberg areas.  Provide infrastructure and services to existing plots.	To be undertaken by ODM and Category B municipalities in respect of each settlement.  “  “  “
25.3-06	Develop / upgrade and maintain public sports and recreation facilities.	Undertake public participation to determine community needs.  Institute development programmes in collaboration with the Department of Sport.  Increase public ownership of recreation facilities to ensure that communities take responsibility for its maintenance.	To be undertaken by ODM in respect of each settlement.  “  “
25.3-07	Develop a regional crematorium.	Investigate availability of an appropriate site for the development of a regional crematorium. <b>(Refer to Strategy B13.1, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be undertaken by ODM and Category B municipalities.

#### KEY ISSUE: URBAN DEVELOPMENT PLANNING

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Institute place-specific town planning as fundamental requirement of all urban development to safeguard the cultural, social and aesthetic qualities of the urban environment.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-08	Regulate urban development.	Prepare a Sectoral Plan for urban development as part of an Urban Development Strategy.  Establish development committee for each settlement.  Determine unique characteristics of each settlement.  Determine appropriate site-specific development guidelines for each settlement (refer to the principles of 'critical regionalism').	To be undertaken by the ODM in respect of each settlement.  “  To be undertaken by the ODM in respect of each settlement.  “

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-09	Ensure sustainable development of the urban edge.	<p>Conduct an urban edge study in respect of each settlement in order to reduce development pressure of the interface of non-urban land.</p> <p>The study should also include the demarcation of the urban edge to analyse the informants in more detail on a cadastral level and to formulate management guidelines.</p> <p>Identify and analyse areas that need special attention.</p> <p>Formulate sustainable development objectives in respect of the urban edge.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM in respect of each settlement.</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p>
25.3-10	Ensure effective public participation in urban planning and development.	<p>Institute compulsory IEM when planning urban development.</p> <p>Ensure effective enforcement of legislation and planning decisions.</p>	<p>To be undertaken by the ODM in respect of each settlement.</p> <p>“</p>
25.3-11	Increase public awareness of importance of wise town planning.	Institute educational programmes to increase awareness.	To be undertaken the ODM in respect of each settlement.

#### KEY ISSUE: TOWN AND SETTLEMENT MANAGEMENT

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Ensure effective management of all municipal functions and facets to ensure equitable and affordable services and amenities, and a safe and aesthetically pleasing urban environment for the resident tax-paying communities.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-12	Ensure use of municipal resources.	<p>Impose equitable taxes or levies on all I&amp;APs.</p> <p>Apply 'user pays' principle.</p> <p>Cut services of non-payers.</p> <p>Tax hawkers appropriately.</p>	To be undertaken by the ODM in respect of each settlement.
25.3-13	Provide adequate emergency services.	<p>Develop and institute integrated Disaster Management Plans for disasters, or emergencies (refer to ambulance, fire protection unit, and emergency security and medical services).</p> <p><b>(Refer to Strategy B8.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Establish Fire Protection Societies and ensure continued capacity building.</p> <p><b>(Refer to Strategy B8.2, Overberg IDP)</b></p>	To be undertaken by the ODM.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-14	Institute and maintain effective law enforcement.	Institute effective <i>Policing Forums</i> and <i>Municipal Police</i> to assist with curbing social crimes.	To be undertaken by the ODM.

**KEY ISSUE: ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT**

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Limit negative impacts of urban development to pre-determined acceptable levels.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-15	Ensure appropriate environmental control over all development.	Determine ecological requirements prior to approving development applications.  Regulate new development in accordance with the principles of 'critical regionalism'.	To be undertaken by the proponent in collaboration with the municipality.  To be undertaken by the ODM in respect of each settlement.
25.3-16	Ensure effective rehabilitation of all construction sites. <b>(Refer to Strategy E5, Overberg IDP)</b>	Submit rehabilitation plans with development applications.  Ensure compliance with rehabilitation plans.	To be undertaken by the ODM in respect of each settlement.  “
25.3-17	Regulate industrial development in accordance with the availability of natural resources.	Determine availability of natural resources as part of the preparation of the IDP.	To be undertaken by the ODM in respect of each settlement.

**KEY ISSUE: ROADS AND TRANSPORT**

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Develop necessary infrastructure and facilities required to improve transportation in, and aesthetic qualities of urban areas.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-18	Develop / upgrade and maintain roads and pavements within urban areas. <b>(Refer to Strategy B5.1, Overberg IDP)</b>	Tarr, rebuild and reseal streets and pavements.  Investigate the need for the building of new streets.  Investigate the construction of a network of pedestrian walkways and cycle paths.	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with the Department of Transport.  “  To be undertaken by the ODM.
25.3-19	Ensure the appropriate management of municipal roads and transport systems.	Prepare a <i>Landscaping and Open Space Management Plan</i> in respect of each settlement.	To be undertaken by the ODM.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-19	Ensure the appropriate management of municipal roads and transport systems.	Prepare a <i>Public Transport Plan</i> in respect of maintenance of existing transport infrastructure, which should be linked to the SDF.	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with the Department of Transport for each settlement.
25.3-20	Determine the viability of establishing an airport of international standard.	Institute research programmes to determine the economic viability of commercialising and upgrading the TFTS airport at Bredasdorp. <b>(Refer to Strategy B6.1, Overberg IDP)</b>  Expand/upgrade and utilise existing, expensive airport infrastructure that is currently under utilised. <b>(Refer to Strategy B6.2, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with the Dept. of Transport.
25.3-21	Determine the viability of utilising the railroads to their full capacity.		To be undertaken by the ODM, in collaboration with the Dept of Transport.

**KEY ISSUE: WASTE DISPOSAL**

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Regulate waste disposal to prevent pollution of the natural environment and natural resources.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-22	Control all forms of pollution.	Prepare and institute integrated management plans for pollution control in respect of each settlement.  Ensure that responsible industries bear the cost of industrial waste disposal.	To be undertaken by the ODM and local municipalities.  “
25.3-23	Regulate waste disposal in accordance with integrated waste management plans.	Prepare an Integrated Waste Management Strategy for the ODM. <b>(Refer to Strategy B10.1, Overberg IDP).</b>  Prepare and institute compulsory waste management plans in respect of each settlement.  Develop and manage central waste disposal sites (disposal sites must be properly fenced and access controlled).  Identify appropriate suitable land for regional waste disposal facilities.  Promote recycling of waste at source.	To be undertaken by the ODM.  To be undertaken by the ODM and local municipalities.  “  “  “



STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-23	Regulate waste disposal in accordance with integrated waste management plans.	Organise a regional summit which would regulate solid waste management. <b>(Refer to Strategy B10.2, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be undertaken by the ODM
25.3-24	Ensure effective disposal of sewerage and storm water effluent.	Institute integrated management plans for the disposal of sewerage and storm water effluent.  Institute and sustain compulsory fixed-point monitoring of the ecological effects of sewerage disposal.  Expand and upgrade storm water and drainage systems.	To be undertaken by the ODM in respect of each settlement.  “  “
25.3-25	Determine the viability of the recycling of waste.	Institute research programmes to determine the viability of the re-use of solid waste materials and sewage water. <b>(Refer to Strategy B11.1, Overberg IDP).</b>  Facilitate the privatisation of actions for refuse recycling projects.	To be facilitated by ODM and DWAF in collaboration with Category B municipalities.  To be facilitated by ODM and Category B municipalities.

**KEY ISSUE: ELECTRICITY**

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Provide essential infrastructure required to improve electricity provision.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
25.3-26	Provide infrastructure and services to accommodate community electricity needs.	Expand and upgrade existing electricity reticulation schemes in each settlement.  Provide lighting in streets.  Investigate feasibility of prepaid meters. <b>(Refer to Strategy B12.1, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be undertaken by the ODM and local municipalities.
25.3-27	Limit environmental impact of electricity provision.	Encourage installation of alternative electricity provision devices, e.g. solar panels, power saving devices.  Place electrical reticulation network underground wherever possible.	To be undertaken by the ODM and local municipalities in respect of each settlement.

### 25.3.4 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 53 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to urban development within the ODM. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 53: Urban Development: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

<b>REPORT 1: OVERBERG IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (ODM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: ESSENTIAL URBAN DEVELOPMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.1	The existing formal residential areas of the formerly disadvantaged groups are often also quite rundown and decayed. These aspects are not conducive to the potential well-being of especially Coloured and Black inhabitants and can eventually mean that human development will decline rather than incline. These conditions are inciting crime and derive communities from all pride in themselves. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05, 25.3-08 to 25.3-11)</b>
1.2	Rapid urbanisation and continued migration to the ODM are leading to random and uncontrolled informal settlement by new immigrants (mostly without proper services being provided) and the construction of hundreds of low-cost houses. In many towns it is causing serious urban and environmental decline. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05, 25.3-08 to 25.3-11 and 25.3-15)</b>
1.3	Aspects that need attention: (a) A proper needs survey is needed on a regional level (b) Sustainable delivery of quality houses (c) Mitigate the impact of continued migration (d) Control the illegal selling of RDP houses (e) RDP houses is sometimes unaffordable for owners, with no choice but to obtain rented houses <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05)</b>
1.4	Cell phone companies are looking for closer involvement with communities. A package of needs in this respect can be put together on a district level and communicated to them. It can make a contribution to development and empowerment in numerous ways. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05)</b>
1.5	Telkom should be informed about the existing needs for access to telephone services in rural areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05)</b>
1.6	The provision and unlocking to telecommunication and modern technology for all communities, but especially for the marginalized groups, should be regarded as investment in human and economic development. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-03)</b>
1.7	Should it be approached in the correct manner, the provision of housing can help not only to address a social problem, but also to play a positive role in the stimulation of economic activity and contribute to job creation and training opportunities. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05, 25.3-11 to 25.3-15)</b>
1.8	Sports facilities are not equally distributed and provided for amongst all towns and amongst residential areas within towns, with the historically marginalized communities worst off. There is also an imbalance between urban and rural areas with respect to the provision of sport and recreational facilities. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-06)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.9	In most of the cases rugby fields are being utilised for cricket and soccer while especially soccer is not reconcilable and contribute to deterioration of such fields. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-06)</b>
1.10	Should communities not take responsibility for the management, protection and up-keep of such facilities, it will be almost impossible to satisfy the demand for play parks for children. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-06)</b>
<b>ISSUE: URBAN DEVELOPMENT PLANNING</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.11	The implementation of integrated environmental management on regional and local levels, with special reference to criteria for making decisions in respect of development proposals, a holistic approach to enhance people's living qualities, environmental education and the forming of partnerships with public and private role players. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-01, 25.3-08 to 25.3-11, 25.3-15)</b>
1.12	Random and uncontrolled informal settlement is causing deterioration of both the urban and natural environments and can eventually influence people's sense of well-being. It should receive timely attention in spatial planning. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05)</b>
<b>ISSUE: TOWN AND SETTLEMENT MANAGEMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.13	Acknowledgement of the threat that veld fires poses for communities and the economy of the ODM by continued support and development of fire fighting services. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-13, 28.2-07)</b>
1.14	Integrated Disaster Management Plans should be compiled for both district and local levels. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-13, 28.2-11 and 28.2-12)</b>
<b>ISSUE: NATURAL ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.15	The entire coastline of the ODM is under enormous recreation and development pressure, the most negative aspects being poor regulation, over-development, environmentally insensitive development and ribbon development. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-01 and 25.3-15)</b>
<b>ISSUE: TRANSPORT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.16	The better utilisation of the two railroads in the ODM should be investigated, especially for the transport of heavy products such as wood, concrete, fertilisers, etc. Deciduous fruit and other perishable products can still be transported by road. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-21)</b>
1.17	International and national export of fresh fruit, fish products, ostrich meat and flowers offers opportunities for the commercialisation of the airport of the Test Flying Training School of the Air Force at Bredasdorp. The landing facilities can accommodate the largest jet aircraft and is currently under-utilised. Should a toll road be implemented on the N2 at Grabouw, the transport of agricultural and other products to Cape Town International Airport will place an increasing burden on the local economy. Adjoining regions such as the Southern Cape and Breede Valley can also benefit from such a project. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-20)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.18	The commercialisation of the TFTS airport and Bredasdorp for national and international export of Overberg products should be promoted. Adjoining regions can be included in such a project. The ostrich products of the Klein Karoo Ostrich Co-op in Oudtshoorn are for example transported to Johannesburg for export, thereby inducing large extra costs for producers. The products from Mosstrich at Mossel Bay are exported via Cape Town International Airport, which is much further than the TFTS facility. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-20)</b>
1.19	Expansion and upgrading of local authorities in order to make the ODM more accessible for tourists. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-18 to 25.3-21)</b>
<b>ISSUE: WASTE DISPOSAL</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.20	Although some of the larger dumping sites are registered, sites that are poorly managed, not well situated, poorly developed, unregistered and that are causing pollution are creating problems. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-22 to 25.3-25)</b>
1.21	While it is offering opportunities for entrepreneurs, little or no attention is given to the recycling of waste. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-25)</b>
1.22	The lack of drainage systems is worsening the problems of poor maintenance and water erosion. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-24)</b>
1.23	Recycling of refuse as joint opportunity for environmental conservation and job creation. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-25)</b>
1.24	Provision of an Integrated Waste Management Plan for the ODM. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-23)</b>
1.25	Promote regional regulation of waste management by means of a regional level summit on solid waste management. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-23)</b>
1.26	Facilitate of privatisation actions for the recycling of refuse on Category B municipal level. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-25)</b>
1.27	The canvassing of experts to deliver input on recycling actions and possibilities. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-25)</b>
1.28	The involvement of chambers of commerce and conservation groups in actions. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-25)</b>
1.29	Special project for the removal and recycling of containers for poisonous agricultural sprays. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-25)</b>
<b>ISSUE: ELECTRICITY</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.30	Upgrading in the quality of power distribution and the elimination of drops which are causing damage and frustration in all economic sectors. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b>
1.31	Although good progress has been made with the supply of electricity, there are still some informal settlements where no electricity are available. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.32	Another worrying factor is the 19,8% of households are still using paraffin and candles for lighting purposes. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b>
1.33	No choice is being provided in respect of the conventional system of power delivery and prepaid metering systems and therefore a large percentage of the inhabitants have no access to electricity because they cannot afford the conventional system. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b>
1.34	Rural communities are disadvantaged by the fact that no uniform electricity tariffs exists between towns and rural areas, with the rates in rural areas being much higher. They cannot afford connection fees and this naturally hampers their development. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b>
1.35	The planning of new townships (especially low cost schemes) with proper provision for street and community lighting (masts) in order to enhance living conditions and crime prevention. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b>

<b>REPORT 2: THEEWATERSKLOOF IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Theewaterskloof Municipality, 2002)	
<b>ISSUE: ESSENTIAL URBAN DEVELOPMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.1	Provision of housing and/or service stands and identifying of housing development sites. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05)</b>
2.2	Upgrading of existing housing and the extension of HOP houses. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05)</b>
2.3	The upgrading of general infrastructure. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-04)</b>
2.4	The commissioning of telecommunications network. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-03)</b>
2.5	Cell phone network, radio stations and television channels. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-03)</b>
2.6	Cleaning and maintaining all public areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-22)</b>
<b>ISSUE: TOWN AND SETTLEMENT MANAGEMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.7	The cleaning of properties as well as municipal properties. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-22)</b>
2.8	The cleaning of the cemetery. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-22)</b>
2.9	Cadastral demarcation <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.3-02)</b>

<b>ISSUE: ROADS AND TRANSPORT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.10	Upgrading of roads, especially in disadvantaged community areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-18)</b>
2.11	Street names, speed humps and stop signs. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-18 and 25.3-19)</b>
2.12	Roads and pavements must be constructed with brick paving to promote job creations. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-19)</b>
2.13	Maintenance and upgrading of street lighting. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-19)</b>
2.14	The construction of bus stop shelters and bus shelter roofs. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-19)</b>
2.15	Programme of landscaping including tree planting to all public areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-19)</b>
<b>ISSUE: WASTE DISPOSAL, SANITATION, STORMWATER</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.16	Supply water and toilets to informal settlements. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-04)</b>
2.17	Upgrading of streets and stormwater drainage system and network as well as sewerage system. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-24)</b>
2.18	Stormwater canals in previously disadvantaged communities must be kept clean from rocks and refuse because with heavy rains, properties and houses are prone to be flooded. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-24)</b>
2.19	Upgrading of the bucket system to 'waterborne' drainage system and the stormwater system. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-23 and 25.3-24)</b>
2.20	Establish refuse removal services to remotely located areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-23)</b>
2.21	Regular maintenance of toilets at informal housing areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-22)</b>
2.22	Provide public toilets at informal areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-04)</b>
2.23	Provision of refuse bins for local businesses and domestic users (include the remote areas). <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-22)</b>
2.24	Consider recycling of refuse. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-25)</b>
<b>ISSUE: ELECTRICITY</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.25	The location of pre-paid electricity pay points must be investigated to bring it closer to the community. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.26	Supply lighting were necessary, distribution of electricity. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b>
2.27	Supply electricity to informal housing. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b>

<b>REPORT 3:</b>	<b>OVERSTRAND IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Overstrand Municipality, 2003/2004)
------------------	--

<b>ISSUE:</b>	<b>HOUSING AND COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT</b>
---------------	--

No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.1	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide for the facilitation of a sustainable housing development process for the socio-economic well being of the area.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Establish uniform data basis.</li> <li>2) Identification of Housing Projects.</li> <li>3) Identification of Land.</li> <li>4) Planning of sustainable Housing Project.</li> <li>5) Administration of Phasing out programmes.</li> <li>6) Facilitate basic infrastructure for transit camps.</li> <li>7) Administration of Masakhane programme.</li> <li>8) Conduct regular housing surveys.</li> <li>9) Administration of Housing related enquiries.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-04 and 25.3-05)</b></p>

<b>ISSUE:</b>	<b>SEWERAGE COLLECTION</b>
---------------	----------------------------

No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.2	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To ensure a cost effective collection service in the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To have a quality controlled service.</li> <li>2) To reduce the number of collection points by providing a proper sewerage network.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-24)</b></p>

<b>ISSUE:</b>	<b>SEWERAGE DISTRIBUTION</b>
---------------	------------------------------

No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.3	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To ensure an operational sewerage disposal network.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To have a 50% operational disposal network by 2006/2007.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-24)</b></p>

<b>ISSUE:</b>	<b>SEWERAGE TREATMENT</b>
---------------	---------------------------

No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.4	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To ensure adequate disposal of sewerage within the legal requirements.</p>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.4	<p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To upgrade all the treatment plants in the Overstrand.</li> <li>2) To have a 100% compliance with sewerage effluent standards and quality.</li> <li>3) To ensure constant planning to meet future demands.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-24)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: WASTE REMOVAL</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.5	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide basic infrastructure services (cleaning services) to the communities of the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To ensure that all waste disposal facilities (i.e. transfer stations satellite stations, decommissioned sites and existing waste sites) are permitted/approved by the Dept. of Water Affairs by June 2006.</li> <li>2) To provide an appropriate cost effective waste removal service to all residents in Overstrand by June 2005.</li> <li>3) To compile an integrated waste management plan for the Overstrand (waste reduction to form part of plan).</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-22, 25.3-23 and 25.3-25)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: ROADS AND STORMWATER PLANNING</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.6	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To plan for appropriate, efficient, cost effective and serviceable streets for the communities of the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) List all problem areas.</li> <li>2) Divide between major &amp; minor projects.</li> <li>3) Prioritise projects.</li> <li>4) Draw up planning schedules for projects.</li> <li>5) Appoint consultants for pavement management survey</li> <li>6) Appoint consultants for traffic management &amp; hierarchical plan.</li> <li>7) Master plans for street networks.</li> <li>8) Implementation schedule for Pavement management systems.</li> <li>9) Policy document – Street signage, Tourism &amp; other signs.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-18 to 25.3-19 and 25.3-24)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: TARRING ROADS</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.7	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide appropriate, cost effective, safe and serviceable tar roads (basic infrastructure) for the communities of the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) List all tar roads.</li> <li>2) Plan and schedule expenditure.</li> <li>3) Construct tar roads.</li> <li>4) Maintain tar roads.</li> <li>5) Supply public parking.</li> <li>6) Institute Traffic calming as necessary.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-18 to 25.3-21)</b></p>



<b>ISSUE: GRAVELLING ROADS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.8	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide appropriate, cost effective, safe and serviceable gravel roads (basic infrastructure) for the communities of the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) List all gravel roads.</li> <li>2) Plan and schedule expenditure.</li> <li>3) Construct gravel roads.</li> <li>4) Maintain gravel roads.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-18 to 25.3-21)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: STREETS - SIDEWALKS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.9	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide appropriate, cost effective, safe and serviceable sidewalks for the communities of the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Prioritise projects.</li> <li>2) Draw up planning schedules for projects.</li> <li>3) Appoint consultants.</li> <li>4) Implementation schedule including tenders &amp; construction as is applicable.</li> <li>5) Verges, furniture, shelters.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-18 to 25.3-21)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: STORMWATER SERVICES</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.10	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide appropriate, efficient, cost effective and affordable stormwater systems for the communities of the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) List &amp; budget for all problem areas.</li> <li>2) Plan and design systems.</li> <li>3) Construct systems.</li> <li>4) Maintain systems.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-24)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: STREET LIGHTING</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.11	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To supply and maintain street lighting.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To supply street lighting to an acceptable level.</li> <li>2) To maintain street lighting on a monthly basis.</li> <li>3) Adequate personnel &amp; equipment.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-19)</b></p>

<b>ISSUE: ELECTICAL DISTRIBUTION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.12	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To supply reliable, affordable and cost-effective electricity to all consumers in the Overstrand municipal supply area.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To supply electricity according to the relevant NRS048 (Quality of Supply Specifications)</li> <li>2) To supply electricity according to the relevant NRS047 (Quality of Supply Specifications)</li> <li>3) Adequate personnel &amp; equipment.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: TOWN PLANNING SCHEME</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.13	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To compile a uniform integrated Town Planning Scheme for the Overstrand Municipality.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To integrate all existing schemes into one Town Planning Scheme.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-01 and 25.3-15)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: TOWN PLANNING ADMINISTRATION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.14	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To develop effective administration in the Town Planning Department.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To handle and process planning issues in terms of the relevant legislation.</li> <li>2) To ensure effective enforcement or regulations.</li> <li>3) To ensure an effective Planning Department.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-01 to 28. 1-11)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: BUILDINGS: CIVIC AND OTHERS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.15	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To ensure the most effective use of resources in order to construct / build and maintain capital assets in the most timeous, functional and aesthetic way.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To draw up an asset register of all building assets in Overstrand.</li> <li>2) To identify needs for office / storage facilities.</li> <li>3) To identify unutilised or under utilized assets.</li> <li>4) To identify security needs for buildings.</li> <li>5) To identify assets for possible disposal.</li> <li>6) To determine whether assets can be used for public private partnerships.</li> <li>7) To construct items on capital budget as per budget schedule.</li> <li>8) To attend to items on maintenance schedule within budget parameters.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-01 to 28.1-11)</b></p>

<b>ISSUE: BUILDING SURVEY</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.16	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To ensure a safe, aesthetic, timeous framework within which the erection, construction and control of all building works comply with National, Provincial and local By-laws and Regulations within the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To receive, scrutinize and pass all standard building plan applications within 21 days.</li> <li>2) To provide info related to submission of plans – response within 24 hours.</li> <li>3) To provide reliable building statistics (updated monthly).</li> <li>4) To inspect all building works within 24 hours of request.</li> <li>5) To provide building control in formal and informal areas.</li> <li>6) To respond to complaints within 24 hours.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-01 to 28.1-11)</b></p>

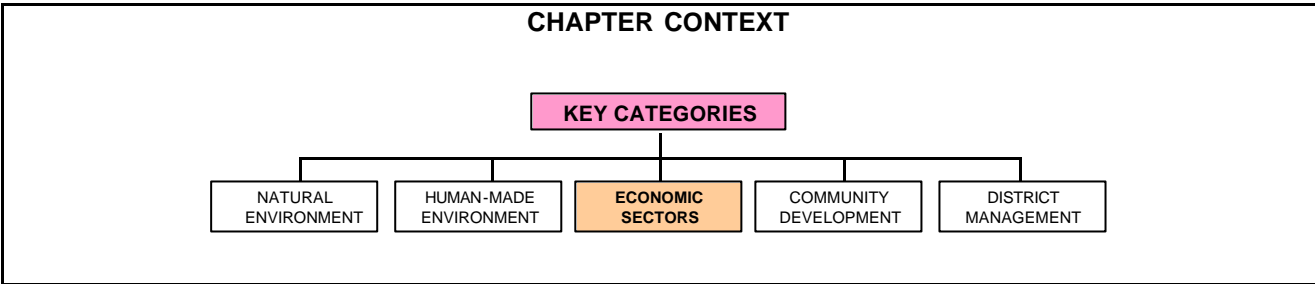
<b>REPORT 4: CAPE AGULHAS IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (CAM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: ESSENTIAL URBAN DEVELOPMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
4.1	<p>The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: B7) Improve communication and information technology systems throughout the ODM B7.1) Upgrading of radio network <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-03)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: TOWN AND SETTLEMENT MANAGEMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
4.2	<p>The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: M6.1) Establish effective organisational structure that can implement legislation <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-01 to 28.1-11)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: ROADS AND TRANSPORT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
4.3	<p>The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: B5.1) Tarr, rebuild and reseal streets B5.2) Build new streets B6.1) Improve and tarr pavements <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-18 to 25.3-21)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: WASTE DISPOSAL (STORMWATER)</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
4.4	<p>The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: B2.1) Address stormwater problems (linked to the upgrading of roads) B2.2) Build out a section of the dry river <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-22 and 25.3-24)</b></p>

<b>ISSUE: WASTE DISPOSAL</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
4.5	The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: B3.1) Sewerage connection points B3.2) Sewage network B3.3) Public toilets <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-22, 25.3-23 and 25.3-25)</b>
<b>ISSUE: ELECTRICITY</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
4.6	The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: B4.1) Provide lighting in streets B4.2) Lighting of dark sections in neighbourhoods B4.3) Expand internal electrical network B4.4) Place electrical network underground <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b>

<b>REPORT 5: SWELLENDAM IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (Swellendam Municipality, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: ROADS, STREETS AND STORMWATER</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.1	The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy: B4) Provision, upgrading and maintenance of roads, streets, pavements and stormwater systems, with specific emphasis on the improvement of the inhabitants' quality of life and the contribution that a good road and street system can make to economic development.  The following projects have thus been identified: B4.1) Tarr Mainroad 268 between Swellendam and Infanta B4.2) Upgrading and maintenance of streets, pavements and stormwater systems B4.3) Establish local public transport forum that, together with the Overberg District Municipality, address specific transport issues and propose solutions B4.4) Traffic impact study on the N2 B4.5) Secure the R62 through Barrydale B4.6) Upgrading and landscaping of entrances to towns and suburbs B4.7) Compile a maintenance plan for stormwater management on all gravel roads in rural areas B4.8) Formulization of servitude roads and informal road networks en rationalizing the road network around Malgas <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-18 to 25.3-21 and 25.3-25)</b>
<b>ISSUE: GENERAL URBAN DEVELOPMENT COMMENTS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.2	The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy: B1) Comprehensive housing strategy, which states that appropriate housing, is a priority for the survival and development of people. The strategy addresses the provision of housing to people in informal settlements, backyards and farms.  The following projects have thus been identified: B1.1) Identify and become land for development B1.2) Plan projects and provide services B1.3) Financing B1.4) Promote 'spin off' effects <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05 and 25.3-08)</b>

<b>ISSUE: COMMUNICATION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.3	<p>The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy:            B7) Promotion of communication and technology in the Swellendam Municipality, with specific emphasis on the provision of complete usability by all communities, including rural communities and previously disadvantaged groups.</p> <p>The following projects have thus been identified:            B7.1) Promote communication and technology usage on all levels.            B7.2) All needs identified during the implementation of project B7.1 must be addressed as separate projects and must be included into the IDP revising process.  <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-03)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.4	<p>The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy:            B5) Comprehensive plan for the provision of electricity to towns and rural areas, with specific emphasis on affordability.</p> <p>The following projects have thus been identified:            B5.1) Upgrading and maintenance: Swellendam Town – Electricity distribution system            B5.2) Upgrading and maintenance: Barrydal/Suurbraak – Electricity distribution system            B5.3) Future handling of electricity supply and distribution to ESCOM licensed areas: Buffelsjagtsrivier, Infanta, Stormsvlei, Malagas and rural areas            B5.4) Clear all the problems that may arise regarding electricity provision between municipality and ESCOM            B5.5) Implement as far as possible pre paid meters            B5.6) Special attention should be given to Rietkuil, Stormsvlei and Buffeljaftsrivier  <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-26 and 25.3-27)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: SANITATION, SEWERAGE, WASTE REMOVAL AND SOLID WASTE</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.5	<p>The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy:            B3) Provision and/or upgrading of sanitation facilities, sewage systems, waste removal services and solid waste management and dumping, with special emphasis on the impact that poor provision, service delivery and systems have on the health and quality of life of people, on water sources and the natural environment.</p> <p>The following projects have thus been identified:            B3.1) Provision and upgrading of sanitation and sewage systems            B3.2) Waste removal and the provision of ablution facilities            B3.3) Waste recycling as employment opportunity            B3.4) Placement of various types of waste bins            B3.5) Evaluation of existing street-cleaning and clean-up programs  <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-22 to 25.3-25)</b></p>

**26 KEY CATEGORY: ECONOMIC SECTORS**



As stated above, ‘sustainable development’ occurs at the intersection of three global imperatives, namely **human well-being, environmental integrity, and economic efficiency** and that if these imperatives are not balanced, sustainable development cannot be achieved. It is, therefore, of paramount importance that the fundamental role of the economy be properly understood and strategies be implemented for ensuring economic efficiency in all the integrated sectors described in this document. Economic efficiency refers to the optimisation of benefit at the lowest cost for valued things.

Diagram 17 below illustrates the structure of the chapters pertaining to the primary economic sectors of the ODM.

ECONOMIC SECTORS	
<b>Chapter 26.1:</b>	<b>Tourism</b>
<b>Chapter 26.2:</b>	<b>Agriculture</b>
<b>Chapter 26.3:</b>	<b>Forestry</b>
<b>Chapter 26.4:</b>	<b>Fishing</b>
<b>Chapter 26.5</b>	<b>Manufacturing</b>

**Diagram 17: Structure of the chapters pertaining to the economic sectors.**

It is recommended that specific studies be undertaken in respect of the manufacturing sector due to the fact that few issues have been put forward in the IDP pertaining to this sector.

## 26.1 TOURISM

Tourism has huge potential to stimulate sustainable growth and development in the ODM. The region has a wealth of unique tourism resources, the primary intrinsic attributes being the exceptional aesthetic quality and uniqueness of its landscapes, a range of natural and cultural resources, a diversity of communities with unique cultures, and unique agricultural enterprises and land use forms.

Tourism is a cost-effective provider of employment, with strong linkages to the local economy, and it represents a substantial multiplier effect. Ecotourism, in particular, can provide economic justification for the conservation of areas that may otherwise not receive protection, and generate revenue for the management of these areas, and the upliftment of local communities. However, tourism also has the potential for having a huge impact on the environment. Being one of the least regulated industries, tourism has the potential to induce devastating environmental and cultural changes. It is therefore important to develop tourism in a **sustainable** manner.

To ensure sustainable growth and profitability in the tourism industry, the following challenges need to be faced:

- a) A substantial portion of the tourism benefits must find its way into the local communities.
- b) *'Practice what we preach'* in tourism developments and operations (e.g. ensure that all new developments in the natural environment qualify as 'unobtrusive' and 'environment-friendly').
- c) Integrate the cultural and natural heritage when putting together tourism packages.
- d) Re-invest a substantial portion of tourism profits in the maintenance of the cultural and natural resources.
- e) Create a strong element of ecological and cultural awareness with tourists in order to ensure sustainability.

### 26.1.1 VISION FOR TOURISM IN THE ODM

#### VISION

Develop tourism as a sustainable industry, supporting or enhancing marginal industries and contributing significantly to the improvement of the quality of life of all the communities of the ODM.

### 26.1.2 RECREATION OPPORTUNITY SPECTRUM: A FRAMEWORK FOR PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT OF TOURISM

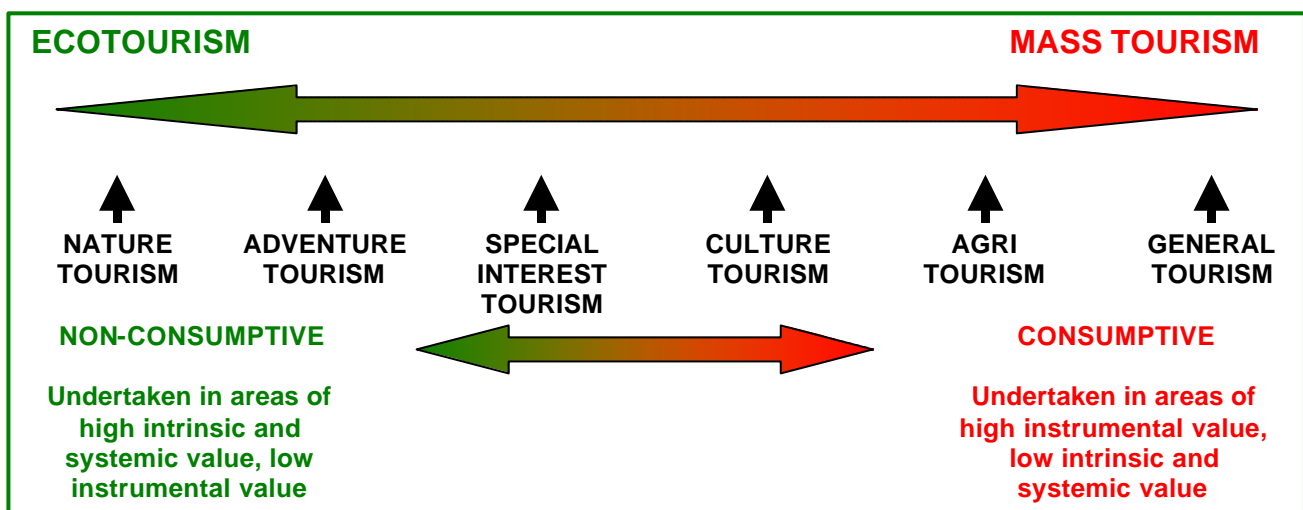
In order to facilitate the planning and management of tourism in the municipal area a framework is provided for the preparation of a comprehensive *Recreation Opportunity Spectrum* (ROS) for the ODM.

The purposes and practical application of the ROS include the following:

- a) It provides a framework for the formulation of an appropriate 'image' for the municipal area and for the branding and marketing of the primary tourism products.

- b) It provides a comprehensive inventory of tourism opportunities so as to attract the appropriate target market. This will be achieved through the creation of appropriate mental images as a basis for the evaluation and selection of the tourist's choice of destination.
- c) It ensures that tourists will not have false expectations and that these expectations and aspirations will be fulfilled.
- d) It provides guidance in respect of the most appropriate tourism type and/or opportunity class to be presented in any zone of the municipal area. These guidelines are based on the environmental ethics and value system described in Chapter 18, and the designated SPCs Categories described in Chapter 17. In order to illustrate where each of the tourism types defined by the ROS can be undertaken, the ROS was linked to, and should be read together with Plan 2 (Land-Use).
- e) It provides a framework that will facilitate the preparation of guidelines for the development of tourist facilities (e.g. in accordance with the principles of critical regionalism described in Par. 25.2.1 above) and the management of tourism activities in each zone.
- f) It provides a framework in terms of which the municipality will be in the position to guide future tourism development and management throughout the ODM.
- g) It provides a framework for the preparation of management plans for tourism destinations and enterprises.

The ODM provides a variety of land uses and tourism types, most of which are interrelated and are presented in the same localities. These land uses and tourism types are categorised broadly in terms of a consumptive/non-consumptive continuum (refer to Diagram 18 below), which is strongly based on the environmental ethics and value system described in Chapter 18 above.



**Diagram 18: Consumptive/non-consumptive continuum.**

The ROS concept implies 'product-led' tourism, which entails developing forms of tourism that are most compatible with the environment and society, and targeting those markets that are consistent with the product even though this may result in fewer tourists, but not necessarily smaller financial return ('market-led' tourism, on the other hand, is tourism that attracts a broad market regardless of the impact of development).



Key requirements for sustainable 'product-led' tourism include the following:

- Provision of high-quality and authentic tourism 'products'.
- Effective educational programmes that promote an understanding of the tourism products with both the tourists and the local communities.
- Effective marketing of the tourism products with the purpose of attracting specific types of tourists.
- Appropriate management of the tourism resources in order to ensure their sustainability.

The table below represents a conceptual ROS for the ODM. It is envisaged that this ROS will be refined through effective I&AP participation and consultation at both the municipal and the neighbourhood area levels.

**Table 54: Preliminary Recreation Opportunity Spectrum for the Overberg District Municipality.**

TOURISM TYPE	OPPORTUNITY CLASS	DEFINITION	ZONE	LOCALITY
NATURE TOURISM	Semi-primitive wilderness experiences	Relatively primitive experiences with some basic assistance and comfort. Includes horse trails, guided trails in the Langeberg Mountains and canoe trips on the Breede River.	SPC A.b (refer to Plan 2)	De facto nature areas.
	Nature Experiences	Non-consumptive activities in natural areas focused on physical and spiritual enjoyment of nature. Relatively safe forms of outdoor recreation such as hiking, biking, sailing, camping, as well as game and bird viewing.	SPC B.a, B.b, B.c, B.d (refer to Plan 2)	De facto nature areas (e.g. the Breede River, Private farms, hiking trails).
	Ethical Fishing	Sustainable fishing with the emphasis on enjoyment of the entire environment and its intrinsic and systemic values. Include catching of endemic species.	SPC B.a, B.b, B.c, B.d, C.a (refer to Plan 2)	Rivers throughout the ODM.
ADVENTURE TOURISM	Adventure and dedicated sports activities	Non-consumptive activities in natural environment. An element of danger; requiring physical skill and endurance, degree of risk-taking. Includes scuba-diving, kayaking, canoeing, mountain-biking, surfing, wind-surfing.	SPC B.a, B.b, B.c, B.d, C.a (refer to Plan 2)	Nature Reserves listed in Table 18 and the coastal zone ODM.
SPECIAL INTEREST TOURISM	Educational study tours	Non-consumptive study and experience of aspects of both the natural and cultural environment and its resources. Includes diverse educational travel programmes. Study plants and animals in their natural habitats.	SPC A.b, B.a, B.b, B.c, B.d, C.a. etc. (refer to Plan 2)	Throughout the ODM.
CULTURE TOURISM	Local culture and tradition in traditional settlement areas	Direct experiencing local cultures, traditions, and life style, e.g. eating traditional food, visiting traditional settlements.	SPC C.b, D.d, etc. (refer to Plan 2)	Throughout the ODM (e.g. Elim, Genadendal, Zuurbraak and Myddleton Mission Stations).

TOURISM TYPE	OPPORTUNITY CLASS	DEFINITION	ZONE	LOCALITY
	Local history, archaeology & palaeontology	Study local history – visit cultural villages, follow cultural/historical routes, visit sites of historical significance.	SPC B.a, B.b, C.b, D.d, etc. (refer to Plan 2)	Throughout the ODM.
	Festive occasions and agricultural shows	Experience cultural shows and festive occasions commemorating local cultural, traditional, agricultural aspects.	SPC B.b, C.b, C.c, D.a, D.b, D.c, D.d, etc (refer to Plan 2)	Larger towns and communities (e.g. Swellendam Agriculture Show, Greyton Winter Festival, etc.).
'AGRI' TOURISM	Traditional life styles and agricultural practices	Study and experience traditional lifestyles and land-use practices of the area, e.g. cultivation/production of wine, wheat, ostrich products, deciduous fruits.  Join the farmer and his family in their home or opt for a self-contained cottage or traditional farmhouse.  Accommodation and guided tours on farms or through agri-industries.	SPC C.a, C.b, C.c, D.g etc. (refer to Plan 2)	Especially along the Breede and Heunignes Rivers, etc.
GENERAL TOURISM	All other forms that are not catered for under the above categories	Includes caravanning, camping, general holiday-making in and around resorts, towns and villages.	SPC D.a, D.b, D.c, D.d, D.h, D.i.	Throughout the ODM.

### 26.1.3 STRATEGIES FOR TOURISM DEVELOPMENT AND MANAGEMENT

Table 55 below summarises the recommended strategies for tourism development and management that have spatial implications.

**Table 55: Strategies for tourism development and management.**

KEY ISSUE: PLACE-SPECIFIC DEVELOPMENT OF TOURISM INFRASTRUCTURE			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Promote the development of tourist infrastructure that will enhance tourism in general and conform to place-specific architectural, environmental and aesthetic requirements.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.1-01	Ensure application of place-specific planning and design guidelines in tourism development.	Undertake development of tourist facilities in accordance with the ROS.  Provide guidelines for future development and restoration of existing tourist facilities in accordance with the concept of 'critical regionalism'.	ODM must develop place-specific design guidelines for all tourism land-use classes.  To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with the various regional tourism organisations (RTOs) and entrepreneurs.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.1-02	Ensure effective upgrading and maintenance of primary tourist routes.	Regular maintenance of tourist routes in accordance with the ROS.	To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with the various RTOs and entrepreneurs.
26.1-03	Develop tourist facilities in accordance with place-specific design and planning guidelines.	Constantly upgrade the ROS.  Prepare site-specific design and planning guidelines for each town and settlement.  Ensure that all development applications comply with the above guidelines.	To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the RTO.  “  To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the local municipalities.
26.1-04	Regulate tourism development and tourism land-use.	Prepare a <i>Tourism Growth Strategy</i> and appropriate management plans to guide the development and management of tourism-related activities.  Plans to be approved by the ODM prior to the development commencing.  Advertise each town within the ODM as a possible tourist destination.	To be undertaken by the proponent.  To be undertaken by the ODM and local municipalities in collaboration with DEADP.  To be facilitated by the local tourism organisations in collaboration with the local municipalities.
26.1-05	Make optimal use of existing infrastructure.	Develop former forestry stations into tourist facilities.	To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with SAFCOL.

#### KEY ISSUE: INTEGRATED TOURISM MANAGEMENT

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Ensure cost-effective management of all facets of tourism at all levels.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.1-06	Establish effective tourism structures throughout the ODM.	Establish a tourism organisation with a tourism bureau in all towns.  Accredit all tourist bureau's in the ODM with the Western Cape Tourism Board.	To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with the local community.  To be undertaken by the local tourism organisation in collaboration with ODM.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.1-07	Promote privatisation of tourism-related infrastructure and tourism management.	Institute tourism management models based on constructive entrepreneurship. Such models could ensure the following: a) Sustainable management of tourism structures and institutions. b) Generating funds for tourism management at bureau level, which would minimise, or prevent, financial inputs from the municipalities into tourism management.	To be undertaken by the local tourism organisation in collaboration with the ODM.
26.1-08	Integrate tourism and other sectors to provide sustainable access to the tourism opportunities inherent to the various industries and sectors.	Prepare and institute tourism sectoral plan in respect of each town or settlement.  Involve all I&APs in the development of integrated tourist packages.	To be undertaken by the local tourism organisation in collaboration with ODM.  To be undertaken by the local tourism organisation.
26.1-09	Facilitate sustainable development and utilisation of the full spectrum of available recreational opportunities.	Prepare and institute a tourism sectoral plan in respect of the entire planning area.  Formulate guidelines for the development, promotion and maintenance of game farms.	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with the local municipalities and local tourism organisations.  “
26.1-10	Ensure efficient management of tourism organisations and bureau's.	Ensure that tourist bureau's are managed by competent, experienced, and committed people that have a direct interest in the tourism sector.  Institute and sustain training programmes for tourism staff and entrepreneurs.	To be undertaken by the local tourism organisation.  “

#### KEY ISSUE: COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT THROUGH TOURISM

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Promote tourism as a community based and community driven industry with substantial potential for providing direct and indirect benefit to the community.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.1-11	Involve entire community in tourism.	Develop and institute educational programmes in local communities.	To be undertaken by the local tourism organisation.
26.1-12	Prevent negative effects of tourism and create benefits for the broad community.	Improve scenic routes and infrastructure.  Collaborate with media to regulate flow of tourists during peak (or freak) tourism events.	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with the local tourism organisations.  “
26.1-13	Ensure direct or indirect benefit to the total community.	Create opportunities for the small business sector (e.g. sale of products, crafts, etc.).	To be facilitated by the local tourism organisation.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.1-13	Ensure direct or indirect benefit to the total community.	Promote the 'multiplier effect' or 'fringe benefits' of tourism (refer to additional jobs for local communities, improved local markets for products).  Investigate the possibility of export of locally manufactured products.	To be facilitated by the local tourism organisation.  To be facilitated by the local tourism organisations and the Department of Trade and Industry as well as Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism.
26.1-14	Introduce formal skills transfer and educational programmes.	Institute skills training programmes e.g. construction skills (thatching, brick laying), entrepreneurial skills (tour operating, guiding, curio producing), administrative skills (receptionists, caretakers).	To be facilitated by the local tourism organisation.
26.1-15	Promote community involvement and representation in tourism forums.	Involve all business and community sectors, e.g. Chamber of Commerce, local authority, RDP forums.	To be undertaken by the local tourism organisation.

#### 26.1.4 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 56 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to the development and management of the tourism sector. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 56: Tourism Development and Management: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

REPORT 1: OVERBERG IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (ODM, 2002)	
ISSUE: PLACE-SPECIFIC DEVELOPMENT OF TOURISM INFRASTRUCTURE	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.1	The ODM offers a diverse series of natural and man-made resources that have unique potential for tourism and the opportunity for future product development. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-01)</b>
1.2	The southernmost tip of the African continent and the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, with its emphasize on the fynbos floral kingdom, place international focus on the region and offer opportunity for generic marketing, while eco- and agricultural tourism also offers opportunities for further development. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-01, 26.1-03, 26.1-04, 26.1-07 to 26.1-09)</b>
1.3	The coastal area is well provided with tourism infrastructure, but in the marginalised towns of Elim, Genadendal and Suurbraak, all tourist destinations within their own right, it is either completely lacking or poorly developed. For example, the ODM offers more than 5 000 beds, while only ±1 500 will be acceptable for international tourists. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-01, 26.1-03, 26.1-04, 26.1-07 to 26.1-09)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.4	The fact that two of the ODM's most famous attractions, i.e. the De Hoop Nature Reserve and the pontoon at Malgas, cannot be reached by a tarred road, hampers development. It is also applicable to a number of roads that can, in particular, be regarded as tourism routes. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-02, 26.1-04 and 26.1-08)</b>
1.5	International agricultural tours and national tourism offers a multitude of opportunities for diversification within the industry, but are hampered by gravel roads and red tape on the part of the authorities. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-02, 26.1-03, 26.1-05, 26.1-08 to 26.1-10)</b>
1.6	The consideration of new applications for development should consider the preferences of tourists and the impact that insensitive development can have on them. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-01)</b>
1.7	ODM should address the matter of re-opening parts of the coast for 4X4 vehicles. It can have serious economic implications for the entire district municipal area and especially for local economies in the coastal areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-03)</b>
<b>ISSUE: INTEGRATED TOURISM MANAGEMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.8	Effective organisation and more specialist knowledge are needed to promote tourism on a regional level and to promote tourism as a cost effective job creator. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-04 and 26.1-06 to 26.1-10)</b>
1.9	The seasonal flow of tourists to the ODM creates a problem. During the summer months the coastal resorts experience an occupation figure of 100% and people can often not be accommodated, while the same figure, during the winter season varies between 5 and 40%. This tendency discourages capital investment in the industry and offers no security for employees. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-04, 26.1-08, 26.1-09 and 26.1-12)</b>
1.10	The Joint Marketing Initiative focuses on the marketing of the Western Cape, with Cape Town as central theme. It is important that the Overberg joins and links up with the initiative. ODM can contribute to help create a joint regional identity. Genadendal was for example identified by the JMI as the most unique tourist product of the Overberg, while the Overstrand coast was indicated as focus point for development. The linking of e.g. Genadendal, the Khoi culture and history in all the other towns of the ODM, the coastal belt with the southern most tip of Africa, archaeological sites and whales as focusing points could contribute to the creation of a regional identity. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-02 and 26.1-04)</b>
<b>ISSUE: COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT THROUGH TOURISM</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.11	The Coloured and Black communities show a notable interest and insight in the industry and regard tourism as a possible key for the enhancement of their living conditions and standards. They should, however, be empowered with skills and the knowledge of management to really become true role-players in the industry. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-11, 26.1-14 and 26.1-15)</b>
1.12	The development and utilisation of the rich Khoi history and the culture of new Xhosa settlers offer extra opportunities for formerly deprived groups to enter the industry. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-11, 26.1-14 and 26.1-15)</b>
1.13	The absence of typical Overberg souvenirs that tourists can buy offers a number of opportunities for small entrepreneurs to produce such goods. Locals can be trained in for example crafts, hotelkeeping, etc. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-13)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.14	Cases of nepotism in the opening up of the tourism industry for previously disadvantaged communities occur and should be eliminated. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-15)</b>
1.15	The empowerment of previously disadvantaged groups in order to enable them to enter tourism and other economic industries and to open up such activities for their participation, with special reference to the restructuring of the tourism industry and tourism management on regional level in order to carry out a strong message of service. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-11 to 26.1-15)</b>
1.16	Tourism bureaus receive funding for poverty alleviation projects on a yearly basis, but often do not have the capacity to spend it. Local municipalities should be co-ordinated by ODM in order to address this matter and include it as part of their IDP projects and to empower bureaus to undertake pilot projects. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-15)</b>
1.17	Special attention should be given to the training of people from previously disadvantaged communities as field guides, etc. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-11 and 26.1-14)</b>

<b>REPORT 2: THEEWATERSKLOOF IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Theewaterskloof Municipality, 2002)	
<b>ISSUE: PLACE-SPECIFIC DEVELOPMENT OF TOURISM INFRASTRUCTURE</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.1	Cleaning, greening and weeding of towns. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-03 and 26.1-04)</b>
2.2	Weeding of town entrances and installation of road signs. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-04, 26.1-08 and 26.1-09)</b>
2.3	Promote sustainable eco-friendly developments geared to tourism, investment and job creation. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-01)</b>
<b>ISSUE: INTEGRATED TOURISM MANAGEMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.4	Promote the development tourism. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-04)</b>
2.5	Investigate the feasibility of agri-tourism. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-07)</b>
2.6	Establishment of a marketing programme. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-04)</b>
2.7	Create a market for local curious and craft handwork. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-13)</b>
2.8	Establish a tourism 'gateway' centre to promote the region as well as the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-04)</b>
2.9	Establish tourism bureaus where there is a need. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-06)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.10	Investigate the establishment of tourist routes (fruit, flower, wine, fynbos). <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-02 and 26.1-12)</b>
2.11	Supplying hiking trails, 4X4 routes to attract tourists. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-02 and 26.1-12)</b>
2.12	Investigate the constructing of museums in identified locations. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-09)</b>
<b>ISSUE: COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT THROUGH TOURISM</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.13	Promotion of local products for exports. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-13)</b>
2.14	Establishment of Ecological Clubs, which will plan day walk routes on hiking trails. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-02 and 26.1-12)</b>
2.15	Skills development of locals who can work in tourist related activities. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-11 and 26.1-14)</b>
2.16	Create a Craft Market at the station buildings at Botriver. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-13)</b>

<b>REPORT 3: OVERSTRAND IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Overstrand Municipality, 2003/2004)	
<b>ISSUE: TOURISM PROMOTION</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.1	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To ensure the sustainability of tourism in Overstrand by elevating it to a world-class eco-venture destination.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Aligning tourism structures in the Overstrand municipal area as envisaged in the Western Cape Tourism Structures Plan.</li> <li>2) Support the development of a research and database system to capture information gained from tourism bureaus, accommodation facilities, etc. to form part of the Overstrand planning and reporting processes.</li> <li>3) Involvement with marketing the area, through tourism bureaus and other structures, such as the Joint Marketing Initiative (JMI).</li> <li>4) Providing infrastructure (routes, road signage, ablution facilities, etc.) to encourage and develop tourism, and to ensure quality experiences.</li> <li>5) Develop tourism attractions in partnership with the private sector.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-01 to 26.1-04 and 26.1-06 to 26.1-10)</b></p>



<b>ISSUE: CARAVAN PARKS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.2	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: The effective management of all caravan parks.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To process all applications within 7 days except December – January peak season.</li> <li>2) To process December – January peak season bookings not later than end of July.</li> <li>3) To attend to all queries and complaints within 24 hours.</li> <li>4) To carry out inspections on a daily basis.</li> <li>5) To execute the projects as set out on the capital budget.</li> <li>6) To initiate a new strategy and policy with regard to the management of caravan parks.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-08 and 26.1-09)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: BEACHES</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.3	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To maintain and establish clean and safe beaches with satisfactory basic services.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To maintain all beaches on a daily basis.</li> <li>2) To employ security and lifeguards for beaches and recreational areas during peak periods.</li> <li>3) To attain full blue flag standard status at Grotto Beach.</li> <li>4) To attain pilot blue flag status for Kleinmond.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-01 and 26.1-04)</b></p>

<b>REPORT 4: CAPE AGULHAS IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (CAM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: GENERAL TOURISM RELATED COMMENTS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
4.1	<p>The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects regarding tourism and marketing in general:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>E2.1) Finance promotion and strategy</li> <li>E2.2) Market rural and agricultural culture and fisherman's homes</li> <li>E2.3) Facilitate the development of a restaurant at Kassiesbaai</li> <li>E2.4) Promote abalone farming</li> <li>E2.5) Information kiosks at entrances</li> <li>E2.6) Establish hiking routes and cycling lanes</li> <li>E2.7) Train locals as tour guides</li> <li>E2.8) Market the area on the internet and through other media</li> <li>E2.9) Development of coastal area</li> <li>E2.10) Upgrading of resorts</li> <li>E2.11) Maintenance of mountain route</li> <li>E2.12) Landscaping of entrances to towns</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.1-01 to 26.1-04 and 26.1-09)</b></p>

## 26.2 AGRICULTURE

Wesgro (1992) states that increasing agricultural production is an important means of enhancing regional income and employment, and subsequently improving the welfare of local communities. This statement is particularly valid in the case of the ODM where the agricultural sector provides the primary economic base. Agriculture is one of the main contributors to the GRP and is the sector that employs the most people in the study area.

The agricultural sector has an enormous impact on the environment. Indiscriminate agricultural development and farming practices cause serious damage to the natural environment and its community-supporting resources. In this regard the agricultural sector holds the key to the sustainability of the natural resources of the ODM. It is, therefore, paramount to ensure that agricultural land is developed and used in a **sustainable** manner. As with any form of sustainable development, the fundamental principle for *sustainable agriculture*<sup>32</sup> is that it must satisfy present requirements without damaging future prospects. To optimise and ensure sustainability of the agricultural sector the following principles need to be adhered to:

- a) **Physical-biological productivity** (maintain and/or improve production/services)
  - (i) Maintain existing fundamental values, technologies and structures supporting sustainable and viable agricultural enterprises.
  - (ii) Develop and apply new technologies to improve the efficiency of farming practices.
- b) **Economic security** (reduce production risk and uncertainty)
  - (i) Encourage local processing of farm products and the provision of local farm services to enhance the rural economy, increase the viability of agricultural production and reduce rural poverty.
  - (ii) Retain all the productive agricultural land for agricultural use.
- c) **Environmental conservation and protection** (protect production potential of natural resources)
  - (i) Integrate land-use planning and community participation to ensure optimum management and utilisation of natural resources.
  - (ii) All farmers are responsible and accountable for the conservation of natural agricultural resources.
  - (iii) Land-users causing unacceptable degradation of the natural environment are responsible for rehabilitation of mismanaged natural agricultural resources.
  - (iv) Real cost of natural resources must be reflected in the pricing of these resources so as to discourage abuse.
- d) **Social acceptability and justice** (promote/establish social acceptability)
  - (i) Ensure equitable access to resources to all communities.
  - (ii) Provide access to agriculture via land reform in accordance with environmental requirements and with full participation and consent of all the affected communities.

The agricultural sector has the potential to solve many of the social problems of the study area (e.g. unemployment, poverty) and to support the land restitution, redistribution and

<sup>32</sup> **Sustainable agriculture** is an approach as well as a process through which different management and technological activities and socio-economic principles are reconciled with environmental requirements (Smyth and Dumanski, 1993).

tenure reform programmes. Programmes to provide land to emergent or 'small' farmers and to support new settlements must, therefore, be a high priority. 'On-farm' options such as 'share-schemes for farm ownership' should be explored by organised agriculture.

### **26.2.1 LAND REFORM PROGRAMME**

South Africa's first democratic government was faced with the need to balance strong demands from dispossessed people with the need to preserve the commercial farming sector. Driven by the Department of Land Affairs (DLA) government opted for a three-pronged land reform policy. Broadly, the land reform policy has three components, each with their own laws and institutions to implement land reform.

#### **a) Restitution of Land Rights**

The purpose of this component is to restore land and provide other remedies to people dispossessed of land rights by racially discriminatory legislation and practice since 1913. The approach to restitution is outlined in the Constitution of South Africa and the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994) ([www.nlc.co.za](http://www.nlc.co.za)).

The Act outlines the qualification criteria for claims, the forms of restitution and compensation, and the processes necessary for the settlement of claims. It also makes provision for the establishment of a Land Claims Commission and Land Claims Court to facilitate and adjudicate the process of claims ([www.nlc.co.za](http://www.nlc.co.za)).

#### **b) Land Redistribution Programme**

The purpose of the Land Redistribution Programme is to provide the poor with land for residential and productive purposes in order to improve their livelihoods. Land redistribution is intended to assist the urban and rural poor, farm workers, labour tenants and emergent farmers. The law under which redistribution takes place is the Provision of Certain Land for Settlement Act, 1993 (Act 126 of 1993) ([www.nlc.co.za](http://www.nlc.co.za)).

The Redistribution Programme consists of three sub-programmes, namely ([www.nlc.co.za](http://www.nlc.co.za)):

- i) Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development (LRAD) - to make land available to people for agricultural purposes.
- ii) Land Redistribution for Settlement (LRSG) - to provide people with land for settlement purposes.
- iii) Non-agricultural enterprises—to provide people land for non-agricultural enterprises, for example ecotourism projects.

The collective aim of land reform is to ensure the transfer of 30 % of all agricultural land over a period of 15 years ([www.nlc.co.za](http://www.nlc.co.za)).

#### **c) Reform of Tenure System**

Land tenure reform aims to provide security to all South African's under diverse forms of locally appropriate tenure. This reform includes an initiative to provide legal recognition and to formalize communal land rights in rural areas; and strengthen the rights of tenants on private farms ([www.nlc.co.za](http://www.nlc.co.za)).

There are four major tenure laws, which regulate the reform of the tenure system programme ([www.nlc.co.za](http://www.nlc.co.za)):

- i) The Extension of Security of Tenure Act, 1997 (Act 62 of 1997), which provides people living on commercial farms with measures to regulate evictions and provide tenure security;
- ii) The Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act, 1996 (Act 3 of 1996) protects the residential and land use rights, such as grazing and cropping rights, of labour tenants on farms where they live, and gives them the right to purchase that land;
- iii) The Communal Property Association Act, 1996 (Act 28 of 1996) which enables communities or groups to form a juristic person to acquire, hold and manage property in terms of a written constitution; and,
- iv) The Interim Protection of Informal Land Rights Act, 1995 (Act 31 of 1995) which provides a short term measure to protect people with informal land rights and interests in land – primarily in previous homeland areas – from eviction or other infringement.

## 26.2.2 LAND REDISTRIBUTION FOR AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT

The Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development sub-programme has two distinct parts. First, there is the part that deals with transfer of agricultural land to specific individuals or groups. Second, there is the part dealing with commonage projects, which aim to improve people's access to municipal and tribal land primarily for grazing purposes ([www.nda.agric.za/docs/redistribution](http://www.nda.agric.za/docs/redistribution)).

LRAD is designed to provide grants to black South African citizens to access land specifically for agricultural purposes. The strategic objectives of the sub-programme include: contributing to the redistribution of 30 % of the country's agricultural land over 15 years; improving nutrition and incomes of the rural poor who want to farm on any scale; de-congesting overcrowded former homeland areas; and expanding opportunities for women and young people who stay in rural areas ([www.nda.agric.za/docs/redistribution](http://www.nda.agric.za/docs/redistribution)).

The Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development sub-programme is flexible enough to accommodate a number of types of projects. Purely residential projects would not be supported under LRAD unless beneficiaries seek to establish household gardens at their new residences, and unless funds for top-structure are sourced from elsewhere, e.g. Department of Housing. The types of projects that can be catered for include—but are not limited to—the following ([www.nda.agric.za/docs/redistribution](http://www.nda.agric.za/docs/redistribution)):

### a) Food safety-net projects

Many participants may wish to access the Programme to acquire land for food crop and/or livestock production to improve household food security. This can be done on an individual or group basis. Many of these projects will be at the smallest end of the scale, because poor families may be able to mobilise only the minimum own contribution in cash, labour and materials.

### b) Equity schemes

Participants can make the requisite matching own contribution, and receive equity in an agricultural enterprise equal to the value of the grant plus their own contribution. Because under the terms of LRAD, the grant is intended for people actively and directly engaged in

agriculture, the grant recipient in the case of the equity scheme will be both a co-owner and employee of the farm. The purchased equity should be marketable in order to retain its value.

### c) Production for markets

Some participants will enter LRAD to engage in commercial agricultural activities. They will access the grant and combine it with normal bank loans, approved under standard banking procedures, and their own assets and cash to purchase a farm. These farmers will typically have greater farming experience and expertise than those accessing land for subsistence or food-safety-net-type activities.

### d) Agriculture in communal areas

Many people living in communal areas already have secure access to agricultural land, but may not have the means to make productive use of that land. Such people would be eligible to apply for assistance so as to make productive investments in their land such as infrastructure or land improvements. These projects may take on the character of food-safety-net projects, or may be more commercially oriented.

It is proposed that the Overberg District Assessment Committee (ODAC) in collaboration with the Overberg District Municipality investigate the Department of Land Affairs' (DLA) agricultural projects and implement the most viable options in order to use the agricultural sector as a mechanism to eradicate the socio-economic problems of the ODM.

## 26.2.3 VISION FOR AGRICULTURE

### VISION

**Develop agriculture as an optimally efficient and economically viable market-directed sector representing a socio-economic 'pivot' of the ODM.**

## 26.2.4 STRATEGIES FOR AGRICULTURE

Table 57 below summarises the general management strategies for agriculture in the ODM.

**Table 57: Strategies for agriculture.**

KEY ISSUE: REGIONAL AGRICULTURAL PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE		Ensure effective management of agriculture throughout the ODM.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.2-01	Ensure sustainable agriculture.	Institute policy and strategies that are being developed by the Department of Agriculture (refer to the <i>Landcare</i> approach).	To be facilitated by the Department of Agriculture in collaboration with the ODM and ODAC.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.2-02	Promote effective agricultural practices.	Determine nutrient requirements of crops and apply nutrients accordingly.  Regulate planting of crops with high water requirements.	To be facilitated by Department of Agriculture in collaboration with irrigation boards and farmers unions.  “

#### KEY ISSUE: FARM PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Undertake appropriate detailed farm planning as a standard practice on farms.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.2-03	Draft and institute <i>master plans</i> and integrated management systems for all farms.	Apply farm planning procedure described in Par. 26.2.5 above.	To be facilitated by Department of Agriculture, agricultural unions, farmers associations, and landowners.
26.2-04	Mitigate recessive economic trends.	Institute programmes to optimise efficiency of farming practices (combining professional managerial skills with human, mechanical and financial resources to ensure sustainable agriculture).	To be facilitated by Department of Agriculture and Land Affairs, agricultural unions, farmers associations, and landowners.
26.2-05	Create sustainable incentives for employees.	Encourage subsistence farming on land allocated to employees.  Consider profit-sharing schemes.  Investigate the projects proposed by the Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development (LRAD) (refer to Par. 26.2.2).	To be undertaken by the landowners in collaboration with the Department of Labour.  “  To be undertaken by the landowners in collaboration with the Department of Land Affairs, ODM and ODAC.
26.2-06	Ensure human resources development.	Institute in-service skills training programmes.  Utilise existing training centres or institute alternative training programmes.	To be undertaken by the landowners in collaboration with the Department of Labour.  “
26.2-07	Institute contingency measures to alleviate effects of natural disasters.	Store surplus water on farms.	To be undertaken by the landowners in collaboration with DWAF.

<b>KEY ISSUE: SMALL-FARMER SETTLEMENT</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE</b>		Provide sustainable opportunities for small-farmers or emergent farmers.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
26.2-08	Provide suitable land for sustainable small farming enterprises.	Explore the viability of emergent farmer settlement in the ODM.  Consider the projects catered for under the LRAD.	To be undertaken by DWAF in collaboration with the Dept. of Agriculture, ODM and ODAC.  To be undertaken by the Dept. of Agriculture, Land Affairs, ODM and ODAC.

<b>KEY ISSUE: AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE</b>		Promote development of sustainable agricultural enterprises in the ODM.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
26.2-09	Regulate agricultural enterprises in accordance with the SPCs.	Centralise intensive farming enterprises in suitable areas with productive soil types, adequate water supply, adequate transportation infrastructure and other services, adequate housing, and in close proximity of manufacturing institutions or markets.  Improve the provision of the necessary infrastructure to farm workers and emerging farmers.	To be facilitated by the Dept. of Agriculture in collaboration with ODM.  Dept. of Agriculture and ODM must ensure that the agricultural sector complies with the guidelines provided by the Department in respect of an agricultural development profile.  To be facilitated by the Dept. of Agriculture in collaboration with ODM.

<b>KEY ISSUE: DIVERSIFICATION AND SUSTAINABLE ALTERNATIVES</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Diversify agricultural enterprises to (a) reduce financial risk, (b) enhance economic feasibility and stability and (c) ensure sustainable utilisation of available resources.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
26.2-10	Determine feasibility of alternative farming options.	Research alternatives such as: a) Aqua culture with endemic or indigenous species. b) Game farming. c) Ostrich farming. d) Tourism in various forms. e) Harvesting of natural plant products, e.g. herbal plants, wild flowers. f) Cultivation of succulent plants for selling to the public. g) Cochineal production in suitable areas.	To be facilitated by the Dept. of Agriculture in collaboration with the Plant Protection Research Institute, Agricultural Research Unit.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.1-11	Diversify enterprises compatible with environmental requirements.	Promote practices such as organic farming.  Consider the labelling of agricultural products.	To be facilitated by Department of Agriculture, agricultural unions, farmers' associations.

#### KEY ISSUE: NATURAL RESOURCE CONSERVATION

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Entrench the status of the natural environment and its resources as the determining factor in sustainable agriculture.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.2-12	Promote sustainable agriculture.	Regulate agricultural development and resource use in accordance with applicable legislation (refer to the Water Act, 1956 {Act 54 of 1956}, ECA, 1989 {Act 73 of 1989}, and the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 {Act 43 of 1983}).	To be facilitated by Department of Land Affairs, DWAF and DEAT.
26.2-13	Regulate the clearing of land for agricultural development in accordance with the applicable legislation.	Institute compulsory EIA prior to any clearing of land.  Establish effective wind breaks prior to clearing of land in erosion-prone areas.  Institute effective law enforcement and impose appropriate penalties for transgressions (refer to the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 {Act 43 of 1983}).	To be facilitated by Department of Agriculture in collaboration with WCNCB, SANParks and ODM.  To be undertaken by land-owners.  To be facilitated by Dept of Land Affairs and Dept of Agriculture.
26.2-14	Control use of agri-chemicals.	Regulate use of agri-chemicals in accordance with the applicable legislation.  Ensure appropriate disposal of containers of chemical substances (refer to Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 {Act 15 of 1973}, Health Act, 1977 {Act 63 of 1977}).  Ensure compulsory implementation of the policy document <i>Minimum requirements for handling of hazardous waste</i> (Dept of Water Affairs, 1994).	Department of Environmental Affairs, agricultural unions, farmers associations, and landowners.  “  “
26.2-15	Promote environmental awareness with all sectors and industries.	Institute regular agricultural 'field' days where importance of environmental care will be emphasised.	To be facilitated by Department of Agriculture, agricultural unions, farmers associations.



STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.2-16	Control all forms of pollution.	Institute integrated waste disposal plans.	To be facilitated by the landowners in collaboration with ODM.
26.2-17	Conserve all natural areas on farms.	Manage all SPC C land in accordance with the relevant SPC guidelines.  Draft and apply integrated management systems for natural areas within agricultural zones.	To be facilitated by the landowners in collaboration with ODM, WCNCB & SANParks.  To be facilitated by the landowners in collaboration with WCNCB & SANParks.

#### KEY ISSUE: REZONING OF AGRICULTURAL LAND

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Regulate and utilise the potential of rezoning of agricultural land to promote comparative economic advantages of the ODM.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.2-18	Institute innovate strategies to facilitate rezoning of agricultural land.	Facilitate rezoning of agricultural land in accordance with the guidelines put forward in Par. 26.2.6 below.	To be facilitated by the Department of Agriculture in collaboration with the ODM.

#### 26.2.5 DETAILED FARM PLANNING

It is proposed that farms be planned and managed in accordance with the guidelines of the Department of Agriculture (refer to *Inleiding tot Grondbewaring*). These guidelines are in accordance with and give practical effect to bioregional planning which is undertaken at various levels, with specific local geographical areas such as individual farms representing the most detailed, or fine grain' planning level.

As stated above, bioregional planning and management *inter alia* require that environmental conservation becomes an integral part of the management of private land and that such land be planned in a manner that promotes sustainable development. The proposed detailed farm planning is in compliance with this requirement. Figure 16 on the following page illustrates the practical implementation of bioregional planning principles in farm planning.

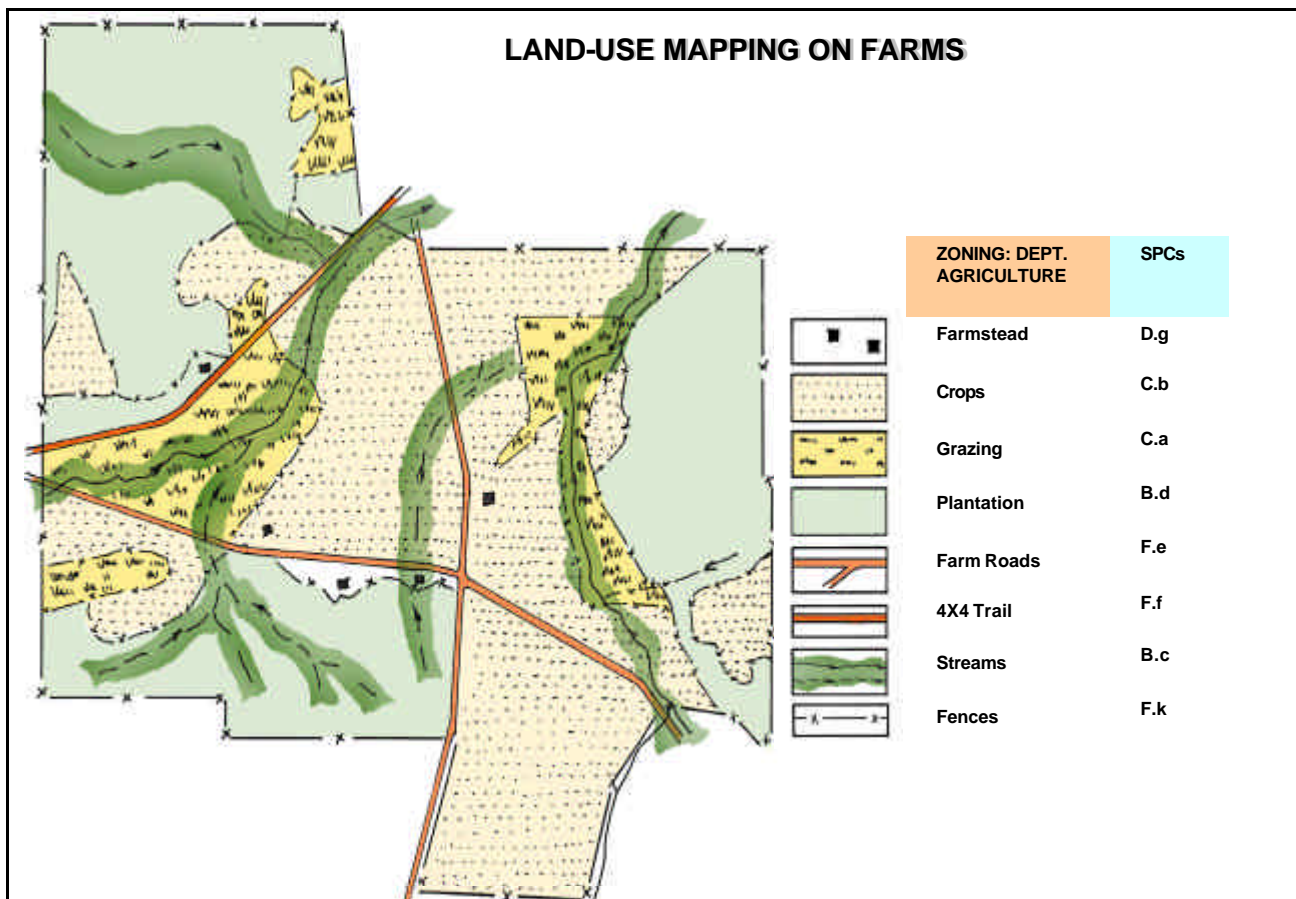


Figure 16: Designation of SPCs on the cadastral unit level (Adapted from *Inleiding tot Grondbewaring*, Department of Agriculture).

Such detailed planning should be a standard practice in cases where new development is proposed. In this regard, proponents will be required to submit to the municipality a detailed SPC plan (as is illustrated by Figure 16) as part of the application.

### 26.2.5.1 SPECIFIC DIRECTIVES FOR AGRICULTURAL AREAS

The following directives are to be applied where development is considered on agricultural land (SPC C):

- a) Sensitive environments within SPC C areas, i.e. areas comprising conservation-worthy biological or cultural resources, representative complex landscapes, and areas prone to hazardous risks, should be excluded from development and should be appropriately conserved.
- b) Enhanced development concessions within SPC C areas should be subject to the establishment of an SMA.
- c) The manner in which farm boundaries are demarcated upon rezoning must be controlled in order to conserve the aesthetic quality and character of the area. In addition, the historical patterns of tree planting and hedges along property boundaries, windbreaks, homesteads, roads and dams within agricultural land, must be considered when rezoning is undertaken and must be conserved and enhanced as important landscape features, maintaining the specific character of the area.
- d) Applications for rezoning of agricultural land could be considered favourably, on condition that they must contribute significantly to the promotion of the objectives of the IDP, specifically those objectives relating to environmental conservation, sustainable tourism development, etc. In this regard, the proponent could be required

to co-operate with adjoining landowners and, through co-operative agreements (e.g. conservancies), combine their resources to establish extensive conservation areas (which include sections of, or entire, ecosystems). In addition, they could also provide outdoor recreation amenities for, amongst others, hiking, horse-riding and 4X4 excursions, which would not be viable on a singular small land unit.

### 26.2.6 GUIDELINES FOR REZONING OF AGRICULTURAL LAND

The protection of productive agricultural land is of fundamental importance for the ODM. It is therefore imperative that any applications in this regard be addressed in a manner that ensures that the objectives of sustainable development are promoted and that the relevant policy and legislation are complied with.

The key objective of policy and standard application guidelines pertaining to the rezoning of agricultural land is to prevent fragmentation of high potential agricultural land. This is also a fundamental objective of bioregional planning, which recognises that the protection and appropriate management of high potential agricultural land are imperative for sustainable development.

In the Western Cape the rezoning of agricultural land is generally based on the principle of sustainable agriculture<sup>33</sup>. This principle is based on the sustainable development equation and the concept of carrying capacity. Each agricultural unit must, in terms of existing policy, be a viable economic agricultural unit.

It is emphasised that, for the ODM to allow non-agricultural development to be undertaken within agricultural areas, it must be assured that such development would not fragment high potential agricultural land and that it would significantly support the over-arching regional, or bioregional objectives, namely to promote environmental sustainability. The proposed development must, therefore, imply a direct, or indirect, positive impact on, for example, regional tourism, agriculture, environmental conservation and the interests of previously disadvantaged people.

In addition to its role in respect of the agricultural sector, the rezoning of agricultural land could be an important mechanism for promoting sustainable economic development by:

- (a) Providing landowners with opportunities to establish on-farm tourism-related facilities and amenities and other enterprises supportive of IDP objectives.
- (b) Cross-subsidising lower-income housing and amenities in Category D.d and D.f areas.
- (c) Facilitating the establishment and management of SPC A and B areas (i.e. core conservation areas, buffer areas, ecological corridors and rehabilitation areas).

---

<sup>33</sup> **Sustainable agriculture** is an approach as well as a process through which different management and technological activities and socio-economic principles are reconciled with environmental requirements (Smyth and Dumanski, 1993).

**Table 58: Guidelines for rezoning of agricultural land** (From: Manual for Bioregional Planning in the Western Cape {PGWC, 2003}).

SPC	GUIDELINES	PURPOSE	CONDITIONS
A.a	No rezoning to be allowed.		
A.b	No rezoning to be allowed.		
B.a	No rezoning to be allowed.		
B.b	Rezoning to be considered under specific conditions and subject to the relevant legislation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Rezoning to Open Space III (SPC A).</li> <li>b) Resort I &amp; II.</li> <li>c) Eco-tourist facilities.</li> <li>d) Research.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) SMA to be established.</li> <li>b) Environmental trust fund must be established and used for environmental management.</li> <li>c) Must be managed in accordance with an appropriate Environmental Management System.</li> <li>d) Regular environmental auditing to be undertaken.</li> </ul>
B.c & B.d	Rezoning to be considered under specific conditions.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Rezoning to Open Space III (SPC A).</li> <li>b) Resort I &amp; II.</li> <li>c) Eco-tourist facilities.</li> </ul>	As for B.b
C.a	Rezoning to be considered under specific conditions and subject to the relevant legislation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Rezoning to Open Space III (SPC A).</li> <li>b) Developing Category D.d, D.e, D.f, D.g, D.h, or E.a.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) SMA to be established.</li> <li>b) No urban sprawl to be allowed.</li> <li>c) New developments must form compact units.</li> <li>d) New developments must be undertaken in accordance with place-specific design and planning guidelines.</li> </ul>
C.b	Rezoning to be considered under specific conditions and subject to the relevant legislation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) New farmer settlements.</li> <li>b) Small farming units.</li> <li>c) Sustainable agriculture-related practices e.g. hydroponics, nurseries, etc.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) SMA to be established.</li> <li>b) Must be project-based.</li> <li>c) Subdivided unit must be capable of sustaining economic farming.</li> <li>d) Development must be in accordance with place-specific design guidelines.</li> </ul>
D.a-D.d	Municipal areas.		
D.e	No rezoning to be allowed.		

SPC	GUIDELINES	PURPOSE	CONDITIONS
D.f-D.i	Rezoning to be allowed under specific conditions.	a) On-farm opportunities for farm workers to own property. b) Opportunities to promote agri-tourism. c) Opportunities to establish sustainable agricultural industry on farms. d) Opportunities to establish resorts.	a) SMA to be established. b) No urban sprawl to be allowed. c) Restoration must be undertaken in accordance with place-specific design and planning guidelines.

## 26.2.7 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 59 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to agriculture. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 59: Agriculture: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

REPORT 1: OVERBERG IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (ODM, 2002)	
ISSUE: REGIONAL AGRICULTURAL PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.1	The format and scale of land tax should be cleared out and finalised as soon as possible in order to promote uniformity and calmness in the sector. Taxes not based on income and not well thought out will therefore have a further negative and crippling effect on the industry. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-04 and 26.2-05)</b>
1.2	The fact that water and electricity are more expensive on farms than in towns and that the inhabitants of farms and rural areas do not receive any free water and electricity, while their services can be cut immediately in the case of non-payment, is detrimental to the industry and the development of farm workers on various levels. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-01 to 26.2-03 and 26.2-09)</b>
1.3	Mutual alignment between the projects of the Departments of Agriculture, Social Services, Land Affairs and other role players is necessary and can be addressed through the establishment of a District Development Committee. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-01, 26.2-03 and 26.2-08)</b>
ISSUE: FARM PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.4	Agriculture in the area is under pressure and timely planning will be needed to counteract the impact this will have on the inhabitants of the region, e.g. growing urbanisation and its accompanying problems. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-09)</b>
1.5	Assistance to new farmers to compile well thought out and reachable business plans, special attention to project management and continued support to ensure that projects are successful. Care should be taken that sufficient irrigation water is available for the projects of new farmers. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-04 to 26.2-06 and 26.2-08)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.6	Investigate current droughts, unfavourable climatic conditions and other hampering factors in the industry and propose measures to overcome or to eliminate it. Consider the establishment of an income stabilisation scheme for the agricultural sector. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-04, 26.2-05, 26.2-10 and 26.2-11)</b>
1.7	Train farm labourers through mobile training units moving from farm to farm. Farmers, labourers and new farmers can often not afford to undergo training elsewhere and can also not leave their homes for long periods of training. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-05)</b>
1.8	Agriculturists are not receiving any competitive advantages (e.g. subsidies) that can enable them to compete on an equal level with their European Union counterparts. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2.04)</b>
1.9	Funding for the protection of products should be made available by government, e.g. for research in respect of livestock, grain and fruit diseases, spraying projects for fruit-flies, etc. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2.04)</b>
1.10	The labelling of agricultural products from the Overberg with a specific Overberg label should be promoted. This is apart from the Cape branding process. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-10)</b>
<b>ISSUE: SMALL-FARMER SETTLEMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.11	As a result of departmental blockages, progress with the settlement of new (small) farmers and land reform is too slow, whilst there are also specific circumstances and impeding factors on a district level that should receive attention. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-05 and 26.2-08)</b>
1.12	The settlement of new farmers can contribute to food security and income for households, crime prevention and the possible addressing of housing backlogs. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-05 and 26.2-08)</b>
1.13	The application of undeveloped land for the settlement of new farmers can create more jobs than the application of already developed land. As production and unit costs per hectare for implements are high and make enormous demands emphasis should be placed on economically viable units. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-05 and 26.2-08)</b>
1.14	Farm workers and members of small rural communities should be empowered. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-05 and 26.2-08)</b>
<b>ISSUE: AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.15	The sensible development of farm stalls should receive attention on a regional level. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-09)</b>
<b>ISSUE: DIVERSIFICATION AND SUSTAINABLE ALTERNATIVES</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.16	The labelling of agricultural products from the Overberg with a specific Overberg label should be promoted. This is apart from the Cape branding process. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-10 and 26.2-11)</b>
1.17	Further diversification in the agricultural sector through the cultivation and processing of flax. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-10 and 26.2-11)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.18	The establishment of value adding industries that are environmentally compatible and friendly and that can process agricultural products, e.g. a flax processing plant, mills, tanneries, processing plants for milk, meat, wool, fynbos, recycling of poison containers into irrigation pipes, etc. Such activities can contribute to job creation and should involve both the formal agricultural sector and the previously disadvantaged labour sector as shareholders. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-10 and 26.2-11)</b>
<b>ISSUE: NATURAL RESOURCE CONSERVATION</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.19	The disposal of the containers for poisonous chemical sprays on farms are creating problems, but also offers opportunities for recycling and job creation. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-14)</b>

<b>REPORT 2: THEEWATERSKLOOF IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Theewaterskloof Municipality, 2002)	
<b>ISSUE: REGIONAL AGRICULTURAL PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.1	Application for state subsidy and funding for farmers. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-05 and 26.2-08)</b>
2.2	External funding for agricultural projects. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-05)</b>
<b>ISSUE: FARM PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.3	Creation of factories for packing and processing of local products / fruit. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-10 and 26.2-11)</b>
<b>ISSUE: SMALL-FARMER SETTLEMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.4	Establishment of economically viable 'small farmers'. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-05 and 26.2-08)</b>
2.5	Empowerment of new farmers. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-08)</b>
2.6	Training and capacity building programme for new farmers with a focus on empowerment of women. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-06)</b>
2.7	Supplement implements to new farmers. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-05 and 26.2-08)</b>
<b>ISSUE: AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.8	Provide housing for farm workers where there is a need. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-09)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.9	Identify appropriate land for new and small farmers. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-08)</b>
2.10	Improvement of infrastructure, e.g. roads. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-09)</b>
2.11	Fencing of existing livestock camps. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-09)</b>
<b>ISSUE: DIVERSIFICATION AND SUSTAINABLE ALTERNATIVES</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.12	Funding of business plan for organic farming. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-11)</b>
<b>ISSUE: NATURAL RESOURCE CONSERVATION</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.13	Identify common grounds/public lands for agricultural use and agricultural industries. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-09)</b>
2.14	Regulate uncontrolled movement of animals/livestock. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-09)</b>
2.15	Provide water for irrigation. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-09)</b>
<b>ISSUE: REZONING OF AGRICULTURAL LAND</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.16	Process of implementing of Law for Transformation of certain Agricultural areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.2-18)</b>



## 26.3 FORESTRY

Forestry plays a part in the economy of the ODM. As stated in Par. 10.2.3, forestry, together with fishing and agriculture, represents approximately 33% of the gross regional income of the ODM.

SAFCOL<sup>34</sup> is currently in control of much of the commercial forestry in the ODM. However, SAFCOL has embarked upon an 'exit strategy', which will eventually have an immensely negative impact on the forestry sector as a whole, as well as the associated industries.

The ODM wishes to promote forestry as a primary economic sector, incorporating three distinct divisions, namely *Commercial Forestry*, *Community Forestry* and *Conservation Forestry*. These divisions are described as follows:

### a) Commercial Forestry

The general objective of commercial forestry is to produce optimum yields, of a high quality, at a competitive cost in a healthy, stable plantation.

To achieve this, effective silviculture is required, the objective of which is to organise and control (where possible) the ecosystem to satisfy the market demand for a range of products, produced in a cost effective and efficient manner from the available resources, on a sustainable basis.

The commercial plantations are susceptible to wildfires and climatic occurrences such as drought, wind and hail. Other factors that cause damage include insects, fungal diseases, rodents, and invader vegetation.

### b) Community Forestry

Community forestry is a recognised element of the forest sector and is thus addressed as a component of the recently developed National Forestry Action Programme (DWAF, 1997).

Community forestry is defined as '*forestry designed and applied to meet local, social, and household and environmental needs and to favour local economic development. It is implemented by, or with the participation of, communities*'.

Community forestry focus on the following:

- a) Local development activities based on a forest resource and undertaken by individuals or community groups.
- b) Generating a range of goods and services, which contribute to household subsistence and may have the potential to generate income.
- c) The planting of trees as well as the management of natural forests and woodlands.

Community property resources are important in helping to meet local, social, household and environmental needs of communities, while at the same time contributing to local economic development. In the ODM, portions of the indigenous forests and commercial plantations can serve as resources for Community Forestry.

---

<sup>34</sup> South African Forestry Company Limited.

### c) Conservation Forestry

The South African forest policy recognise the value of natural forests and describes them as a 'national asset'. This statement acknowledges our obligation to the global community to adequately protect the forests and biodiversity of the world but equally stresses the importance of community-based methods of managing these resources and sharing of benefits.

The primary objectives of Conservation Forestry in the ODM are the following:

- a) Conservation / sustainable use of State Forests.
- b) Rehabilitation and conservation of threatened forests.
- c) Promotion of sustainable use of forests for local economic development.

#### 26.3.1 VISION FOR FORESTRY

<b>VISION</b>
<b>Retain forestry as a sustainable market-directed sector utilising the available resources of the ODM, including the indigenous forests and existing commercial plantations, as a basis for socio-economic development.</b>

#### 26.3.2 STRATEGIES FOR FORESTRY

Table 60 below summarises the recommended strategies for forestry in the ODM.

**Table 60: Strategies for forestry in the ODM.**

<b>KEY ISSUE: COMMERCIAL FORESTRY</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure maintenance of commercial forestry as a primary economic sector in the ODM.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
26.3-01	Institute a programme to maintain commercial forestry.	<p>Prepare a regional forestry strategy, using SAFCOL's 'exit strategy' as a basis.</p> <p>This strategy has to consider the use of state land for sustainable Community Forestry, and promote privately-owned forestry enterprises.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by DWAF in collaboration with the ODM.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM.</p>

<b>KEY ISSUE: COMMUNITY FORESTRY</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Promote development of community forestry as a primary economic sector in the ODM.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
26.3-02	Institute a programme to develop community forestry.	Prepare a regional forestry strategy, using SAFCOL's 'exit strategy' as a basis.  This strategy has to consider the use of state land for sustainable Community Forestry.	To be facilitated by DWAF in collaboration with the ODM.  To be facilitated by the ODM.

<b>KEY ISSUE: CONSERVATION FORESTRY</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure maintenance of conservation forestry as a primary economic sector in the ODM.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
26.3-03	Institute a programme to promote conservation forestry.	Prepare a regional forestry strategy that will promote Conservation Forestry as a sustainable economic sector.	To be facilitated by DWAF in collaboration with the ODM.
26.3-04	Diversify and optimise the use of conservation forestry areas.	Prepare a regional forestry strategy that will address <i>inter alia</i> the diversification and optimal use of forest resources, including the following: a) Outdoor recreation. b) Hunting of bushbuck and bushpig.	To be facilitated by DWAF in collaboration with the ODM.

### 26.3.3 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

No reference was made in the IDPs of the vitally important forestry sector and the current developments that have an effect on this sector (refer, specifically, to SAFCOL's 'exit programme').

It is proposed that this sector be addressed by means of a dedicated study report and that a regional strategy be prepared by the ODM as a matter of urgency in order to ensure that the potential of forestry as a major economic sector be utilised to its full extent.

## 26.4 FISHING

The marine ecosystems and their associated renewable and non-renewable resources found within the coastal regions of the ODM play a major role in sustaining the economic and social development of various communities.

It is recognised that threats to near-shore marine biodiversity have intensified in number, size and scale as human population and dependence has grown over the second half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. Over-exploitation, use of destructive fishing practices, human development and population within coastal areas have degraded and destroyed coastal habitat and coastal losses in near-shore human quality of life. The ability of coastal resources to sustain human activities is therefore clearly reduced.

Illegal fishing is also a major threat to fish and marine biodiversity. The *United Nations Food and Agricultural Organisation* (FAO) estimates that 60 – 70% of the world's major fish stocks are fully exploited or over-exploited. Illegal fishing fleets seriously undermine international efforts to conserve fish stocks.

Virtually all forms of pollution and waste find their way to the sea. The legal control of pollution of the marine environment is generally classified under the following distinct, but not logical headings (Fuggie & Rabie, 1992):

- Pollution from maritime activities (particularly shipping).
- International dumping of matter at sea.
- Pollution from land-based sources.
- Pollution from offshore mining activities.

The South African government drafted a policy for the sustainable utilisation of marine resources. The objectives and principles of this policy, as stated in the Marine and Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998), is as follows:

- a) Optimisation and ecologically sustainable utilisation of marine living resources.
- b) Conservation of marine living resources for both present and future generations.
- c) Application of precautionary approaches in respect of the management and development of marine living resources.
- d) Utilisation of marine living resources to achieve economic growth, human resource development, capacity building with fisheries and mariculture branches, employment creation and a sound ecological balance consistent with the development objectives of the national government.
- e) Protection of the ecosystem as a whole, including species which are not targeted for exploitation.
- f) Preservation of marine biodiversity.
- g) Minimising marine pollution.
- h) Participation in the decision-making processes.
- i) Any relevant obligation of the national government in terms of any international agreement or applicable rule of international law.
- j) Restructuring of the fishing industry to address historical imbalances and to achieve equity within all branches of the fishing industry.

### 26.4.1 VISION FOR FISHING

<b>VISION</b>
<b>Develop fishing as a sustainable economic sector utilising the available resources of the ODM.</b>

### 26.4.2 STRATEGIES FOR FISHING

Table 61 below summarises the recommended strategies for fishing in the ODM.

**Table 61: Strategies for fishing in the ODM.**

<b>KEY ISSUE: HARBOURS AND PROCESSING FACILITIES</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure development and maintenance of harbours and facilities required for viable fishing.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
26.4-01	Institute a development and maintenance programme for harbour facilities.	Prepared development plans for each harbour and incorporate these into the IDPs.	To be facilitated by DEAT in collaboration with the Category B Municipalities and ODM.
26.4-02	Develop/upgrade and maintain harbour facilities, boat slipways and boat landing facilities. <b>(Refer to Strategy B7, Overberg IDP)</b>	Expand the facilities at existing harbours to stimulate fishing industry.  Provide facilities for tourists, e.g. yacht facilities.  Provide/upgrade slipways and boat landing facilities at smaller towns and settlements.  Provide necessary ablution and other facilities at harbours, slipways and boat landing areas.	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with relevant departments.  “  To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with relevant departments.  “

<b>KEY ISSUE: SUSTAINABLE UTILISATION OF FISH RESOURCES</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Promote sustainable utilisation of indigenous and exotic fish species for financial benefit.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
26.4-03	Regulate the provision of fishing quotas.	Restructure the fishing industry in order to move the direction of larger proportions of the fishing quota being sold to small-scale fishing operators.	To be facilitated by DEAT and Department of Marine and Coastal Management in collaboration with the WCNCB and SANParks

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.4-03	Regulate the provision of fishing quotas.	<p>Take the historical rights of fishing communities into consideration in the allocation of fishing quotas.</p> <p>Encourage partnerships between local communities and large-fishing companies.</p> <p>Amend legislation to allocate fewer fishing licenses to overseas fishing companies in South African Waters.</p> <p>Institute and sustain monitoring programmes.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by DEAT and Department of Marine and Coastal Management in collaboration with the WCNCB and SANParks</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p>
26.4-04	Establish secondary fish related industries.	Train and empower local communities to enter into secondary industries, e.g. reparation of nets.	To be facilitated by the MCM and relevant departments.
26.4-05	Promote and apply principles of sustainable resource utilisation.	Institute educational programmes to foster and promote an adequate understanding of the inter-relationship between responsible fishing, resource soundness, ecosystem health and community prosperity.	To be facilitated by the MCM, WCNCB, SANParks, Department of Marine and Coastal Management.

#### KEY ISSUE: PROTECTION OF RESOURCES

**OBJECTIVE:** Ensure the protection of marine resources.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.4-06	Institute conservation programmes.	<p>Establish marine reserves in accordance with Plan 4.</p> <p>Sustain research programmes to determine available resources.</p> <p>Ensure appropriate law enforcement.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by DEAT and Department of Marine and Coastal Management and ODM.</p> <p>Department of Marine and Coastal Management.</p> <p>“</p>

#### KEY ISSUE: ALTERNATIVE SOURCES AND AQUACULTURE ENTERPRISES

**OBJECTIVE:** Explore the feasibility of alternative fishing and aquaculture enterprises as community empowerment initiatives.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.4-07	Institute research into aquaculture.	<p>Establish relationship with Aquastel of the University of Stellenbosch.</p> <p>Establish pilot projects in both marine areas and terrestrial waters in collaboration with Aquastel.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM.</p> <p>“</p>

### 26.4.3 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 62 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to the fishing industry of the ODM. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 62: Fishing Industry: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

<b>REPORT 1: OVERBERG INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (ODM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: FISHING INDUSTRY</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.1	Restoration of cession rights in respect of marine products to the formerly marginalised coastal communities of the ODM in order to promote economic development and minimise illegal stripping of resources. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-03)</b>
1.2	There is an urgent need for the local training of navigators and skippers for pelagic and other fishing vessels. Training is presented outside the ODM, is expensive and is often incurring additional costs for local fishers, thus limiting them to the positions of labourers or fishermen on vessels. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-04)</b>
1.3	Training and empowerment for the entry into and establishment of secondary industries such as the reparation of nets, the making of other products from waste nets, etc. and the management of small businesses are necessary. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-03 to 26.4-05)</b>
1.4	The local fishing communities are in need of partnerships with large fishing companies and factories to embark on their own project. The district municipality can play a role in the search for partners, money scouting and liaison with the Development Bank of Southern Africa to become involved. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-03)</b>
1.5	The awarding of cession rights for kelp, bamboo, etc. to local fishing communities in stead of to persons from outside the ODM can contribute to the alleviation of suffering and poverty. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-03)</b>
<b>ISSUE: HARBOUR FACILITIES</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.6	The creation of additional opportunities for fishing communities who are suffering through the development of hive facilities, etc. where marine and other products can be processed and sold to the tourism and local markets. Should the municipalities provide the facilities, the larger factories can refer some of their activities, such as the processing and packing of kelp, to such projects. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-01 to 26.4-05)</b>
1.7	The harbour in Gansbaai is in need of yacht facilities to promote tourism and create job opportunities for locals. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-01 and 26.4-02)</b>
1.8	The harbour facilities in Buffeljagtsbaai, Hawston and Kleinmond are in need of general upgrading and safeguarding, ablution facilities for tourist and harbour users and facilities where local fishermen can sell their products. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-01 and 26.4-02)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.9	Too many institutions are involved with the control and management of harbours, thus causing confusion and lack of progress. Role players often blame each other for problems and shortcomings and are hiding one behind the other when facilities are not properly developed. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-01 and 26.4-02)</b>
1.10	Communities should be allowed to develop smaller local harbours themselves and to benefit from such development. The district municipality can take over the harbours or facilitate community driven upgrading projects. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-01 and 26.4-02)</b>
1.11	With the exemption of the harbours at Gansbaai and Hermanus, the other facilities along the coast are poorly developed and are hampering the fishing communities to extend their activities and also enter the tourism industry. Facilities for launching boats is meagre and dangerous. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 26.4-01 and 26.4-02)</b>



## 26.5 MANUFACTURING

The wide range of natural resources found within the ODM lends itself to a variety of manufacturing activities and products. These include *inter alia* processes such as handcraft, light manufacturing and heavy industrial activities.

As is generally known, the harvesting and processing of resources can have a detrimental effect on the environment in terms of environmental pollution (air, water, soil, etc.). In the past, environmental protection essentially implied controlling pollutants before they were released into the environment. In future manufacturing mechanisms should be designed to prevent the generation of pollution throughout the production process. The growing levels of industrial effluents, stricter pollution control laws and increasing industrial activity are calling for an authority to assess the environmental impact of manufacturing sector.

In order to protect the unique natural characteristics of the ODM, the objective is to ensure that all manufacturing is sustainable. In this regard, the following needs to be instituted:

- a) Constant assessment of the environmental impact of manufacturing activities.
- b) Development of system packages for industrial clients.
- c) Manufacturing and maintenance of pollution control equipment.
- d) Development and implementation of 'low or no waste technologies'.
- e) Modification of the manufacturing system itself, with the view to optimise resource use and minimise waste and ecological damage ([www.educationtimes.com](http://www.educationtimes.com)).

The Asbestos Institute (1999–2000) identified an environment-friendly product as one which encompass the following:

- a) Produced by low energy-consuming technology.
- b) Has a long useful service life.
- c) Is made from simple starting materials.
- d) Present a relatively low risk during its manufacture.
- e) Presents a relatively low risk when in use.
- f) Presents a relatively low risk when stored or transported, prior to or after use.
- g) Constitutes a relatively low risk at final disposal site.

### 26.5.1 VISION FOR MANUFACTURING

#### VISION

**To develop the manufacturing sector into a competitive economic sector, which builds on the comparative economic advantages of the ODM, and operates in accordance with the highest standards for environmental management.**

## 26.5.2 STRATEGIES FOR MANUFACTURING

Table 63 below summarises the recommended strategies for manufacturing in the ODM.

**Table 63: Strategies for manufacturing in the ODM.**

<b>KEY ISSUE: INDUSTRIAL AREAS AND MANUFACTURING FACILITIES</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure proper planning and development of industrial areas and manufacturing facilities required for adequate manufacturing of products.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
26.5-01	Investigate the best location for industrial and manufacturing activities.	Identify proper industrial sites that would encourage economically healthy industries with minimal environmental impact on communities.	To be facilitated by the Category B Municipalities in collaboration with ODM.
26.5-02	Draft and institute master plans and integrated management systems for all industrial areas.	Prepare detailed long-term development and management plans for each industrial area and manufacturing facility within the ODM.	To be facilitated by the Category B Municipalities in collaboration with ODM.
26.5-03	Regulate manufacturing enterprises in accordance with the SPCs.	Centralise manufacturing enterprises and industrial areas with proximity to resources, adequate water supply, adequate transportation infrastructure and proximity to markets.	To be facilitated by the ODM.

<b>KEY ISSUE: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure the sustainable use and protection of the natural resources.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS</b>	<b>ACTION PLANS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
26.5-04	Identify all conservation-worthy areas within, and surrounding, industrial and manufacturing areas.	Indicate conservation areas on the industrial development and management plans.  Undertake research programmes to identify conservation-worthy areas.	To be facilitated by the DEAT and ODM.  “
26.5-05	Institute policies that will ensure sustainable manufacturing.	Develop consistent methodologies for implementing sustainable metrics.	
26.5-06	Promote effective manufacturing practices.	Undertake environmental audits as a first step towards improved environmental management.  Promote integration of environmental management by firms in their management frameworks.	To be facilitated by the DEAT, ODM and a credited environmental engineer.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.5-07	Impose and monitor manufacturing programmes.	<p>Institute effective law enforcement.</p> <p>Institute compulsory management / monitoring programmes for waste products.</p>	<p>DEAT must impose applicable legislation (refer to the Environmental Conservation Act, 1989 {Act 73 of 1989}, National Environmental Management Act, 1998 {Act 107 of 1998}).</p> <p>ODM and a credited environmental engineer must ensure that industries comply with management plans.</p>

**KEY ISSUE: PUBLIC INVOLVEMENT**

**OBJECTIVE:** Ensure constructive public involvement in manufacturing activities.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.5-08	Ensure educated public interest and involvement in manufacturing activities.	<p>Institute educational programmes to establish public interest and involvement in manufacturing activities.</p> <p>Encourage communities to support industries and to eliminate negative impacts from existing industries.</p>	<p>To be undertaken by the relevant organisations and companies in collaboration with ODM.</p> <p>“</p>
26.5-09	Develop sharing of knowledge and diffusion of manufacturing knowledge.	<p>Encourage industries and communities to actively work together to achieve sustainable manufacturing methods.</p> <p>Provide support and advice to industries with regards to environmental management.</p>	<p>DEAT to provide support with regards to environmental management.</p>

**KEY ISSUE: EXPLORING EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES**

**OBJECTIVE:** Explore alternative and emerging technologies to improve quality and quantity within the manufacturing sector.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.5-10	Determine feasibility of alternative manufacturing options.	<p>Research alternative / sustainable manufacturing options and emerging technologies.</p> <p>Provide the domestic market opportunities necessary for the development of new products.</p>	<p>To be undertaken by the relevant organisations and companies.</p>

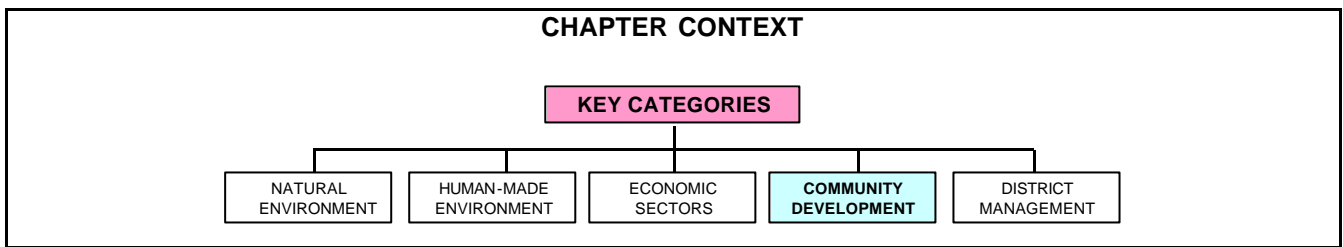
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS	ACTION PLANS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
26.5-11	Institute manufacturing from recycled products.	Institute effective laws to make manufacturers legally responsible for collecting and recycling products that have reached their use-by date.	To be facilitated by the DEAT and ODM.
26.5-12	Create a comfortable working environment.	Encourage a sustainable working environment to enhance creativity and productivity.	To be undertaken by the relevant organisations and companies.

### 26.5.3 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

No reference was made in the IDPs of the important manufacturing sector and its implications for the dependent communities and the natural environment.

It is proposed that this sector be addressed by means of a dedicated study report and that a regional strategy be prepared by the ODM in order to ensure that the potential of manufacturing as a major economic sector be utilised to its full extent.

## 27 KEY CATEGORY: COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT



### 27.1 GENERAL BACKGROUND

Human community requirements represent a primary element of sustainable development. In the World Conservation Strategy, **sustainable development** is considered to be a set of tools and strategies that respond to five broad requirements, namely:

- a) Integration of conservation with development.
- b) Achievement of equity and justice.
- c) Provision of social self-determination and cultural diversity.
- d) Maintenance of ecological integrity.
- e) Satisfaction of basic human needs.

Humans are generally considered as the primary disturbance factor in any environment. This implies that the people of the ODM will determine the ultimate fate of the environment within which they live.

An important aspect in this regard, is that the levels of social development of the people of an area play an important role in the manner in which they settle that area, develop their facilities, and utilise the natural environment and its resources. Therefore, in order to ensure environmental sustainability, it is of paramount importance to institute (a) sustainable social development at all levels of society, and (b) equitable economic and social restructuring. This implies making significant investments in the social development of the human communities of the area. In this regard, the following age-old saying is particularly relevant, namely...*'If you plan for a year, plant a seed. If you plan for ten years, plant a tree. If you plan for hundred years, educate (develop) the people. If you plant seed once, you will harvest once. If you educate (develop) people, you will harvest a hundred crops.'* (K'UAN TZU, 551-479 BC).

Unemployment and poverty are seen as the critical issues that need to be addressed in the ODM. To address the above critical issues, social development strategies should aim at improving the HDI<sup>35</sup> of historically disadvantaged groupings in the ODM through the following:

- a) **Building the economy:** Increase personal income levels, reduce unemployment, reduce inequality, reduce abject poverty.
- b) **Developing human resources:** Improve literacy and educational levels.
- c) **Providing basic needs:** Improve life expectancy, and enhance quality of life by providing clean drinking water, housing, primary health care, sports and recreation, social services, access to basic transport, and security.

<sup>35</sup> The HDI is a composite index reflecting life expectancy, education and income. This index was developed by the United Nations Development Programme and provides an internationally comparable measure of people's ability to communicate, to participate in the community and to have sufficient means to afford a decent living.

According to the United Nations Human Development Report (1996) there is no automatic link between economic growth and human development. Economic growth, however, is important to create job opportunities and increased wages. In moving towards an increased level of human development, economic growth is seen as an important vehicle for achieving this goal.

Economic growth should, however, also be evaluated in the context of its potentially negative influences on the natural environment. Economic growth in the ODM implies increased agricultural and industrial activities and subsequently higher consumption of natural resources. With water already a limiting factor in the certain parts of the ODM, economic growth may, therefore, not be the ultimate 'vehicle' for achieving the desired goal.

Growing unemployment figures in South Africa can be interpreted as an indication that the population is growing beyond the resources of the country. When thus contemplating sustainable social development, the most important social issue that needs to be addressed, is **population growth**. Population growth needs to be brought under control to ensure sustainable development in the country as a whole (Ledger, 1996). Programmes to control population growth will have to bridge deep-rooted cultural notions and create a new order conforming to the requirements of the modern South Africa.

As stated before, UNESCO'S MAB Programme deals with people-environment interactions over the entire realm of bioclimatic and geographic situations of the biosphere. The MAB Programme provides a framework and mechanisms that can be applied to improve the well-being of the people of the ODM. This provides primary motivation for the establishment of an additional biosphere reserve in the ODM.

### 27.1.1 VISION FOR COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT AND EMPOWERMENT

<b>VISION</b>
<b>Establish an optimally developed and empowered society in harmony with its environment.</b>

### 27.1.2 STRATEGIES FOR COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT AND EMPOWERMENT

Table 64 below summarises the strategies for community development and empowerment development in the ODM.

**Table 64: Strategies for community development and empowerment.**

KEY ISSUE: HUMAN RESOURCES DEVELOPMENT			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Ensure sustainable development of all the people of the ODM.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-01	Improve human resource management skills through training.	Develop and institute an integrated human resources development strategy. <b>(Refer to Strategy E9, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be facilitated by Department of Labour, agricultural unions, farmers associations and other employers.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-01	Improve human resource management skills through training.	<p>Institute training programmes for employers / human resource managers.</p> <p>Employ human resource management consultants and labour relations consultants.</p> <p>Investigate the possibility to establish a Regional Poverty Alleviation Initiative to identify poverty pockets and poverty alleviation strategies.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by Department of Labour, agricultural unions, farmers associations and other employers.</p> <p>“</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the Department of Labour and other institutions.</p>
27.1-02	Institute integrated strategies to provide employment for the total labour force of the ODM.	<p>Institute empowerment initiatives such as the Franschoek Empowerment and Development Initiative (FEDI). <b>(Refer to Strategy E9, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Appoint a task team to undertake a pilot study into the viability of the development of economic and empowerment projects. <b>(Refer to Strategy E9.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Establish labour offices in every community to co-ordinate employment.</p> <p>Institute RDP projects (e.g. eradicating invasive alien plants).</p> <p>Institute programmes to encourage people to work. <b>(Refer to Strategy E9, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Promote special projects to enhance the empowerment of women.</p> <p>Institute the following job creation / training programmes as listed by the Department of Transport and Public works:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Zenzele Roads Maintenance Programme,</li> <li>Public Works Empowerment Programme,</li> <li>Emerging Contractor Development Programme,</li> <li>Experimental Training Programme, and</li> <li>Motor Vehicle Cleaning Service.</li> </ol>	<p>To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with the community and private sector.</p> <p>To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with the community and private sector.</p> <p>To be facilitated by Dept of Labour, agricultural unions, farmers associations and other employers.</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with the community and private sector.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the Department of Transport and Public Works, and other employers.</p>

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-03	Create opportunities for self-employment.	Institute skills training programmes to 'help people to help themselves'.  Promote the establishment of SMMEs (Small, medium and micro enterprises). <b>(Refer to Strategy E9, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be facilitated by Dept of Trade and Industry, Small Business Development Corporation and community development associations.
27.1-04	Prevent unfair labour practices.	Establish local <i>Advisory Offices</i> to assist employers and employees in solving disputes.  Establish legal contracts between employers and employees.	To be facilitated by Department of Labour.  To be undertaken by all employers.
27.1-05	Administer the relevant legislation.	Impose applicable labour legislation such as the Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995), Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1983 (Act 3 of 1983).	To be undertaken by all employers.
27.1-06	Promote the formation of labour unions with a-political motives.	Institute educational programmes to change negative paradigms and perceptions with all I&APs.	To be facilitated by industry and other affected sectors.
27.1-07	Improve productivity at all levels of society.	Develop and institute motivational programmes.  Apply available motivational theories and strategies, such as providing equitable remuneration, acceptable housing and services, security, and opportunities for personal development.  Promote occupational well-being through the establishment and maintenance of safe conditions in the work place. <b>(Refer to Strategy M7.1, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be undertaken by all employers in collaboration with labour unions and Department of Labour.  To be undertaken by all employers in collaboration with labour unions and Department of Labour.

#### KEY ISSUE: DEVELOPING THE SOCIAL ENVIRONMENT

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Create a safe, healthy and aesthetically acceptable social environment for all the communities of the ODM.

27.1-08	Ensure essential social and public services and amenities to all communities at affordable rates.	Provide primary health care, accommodation for the aged, low cost housing, public transport, schools and skills training institutions, hospitals / medical clinics, mobile clinics, security services and communication services. <b>(Refer to Strategy B9, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be facilitated by Dept of Welfare, Dept of Health, Dept of Education, Dept of Transport in collaboration with the ODM and local municipalities.
---------	---	--	--



STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-08	Ensure essential social and public services and amenities to all communities at affordable rates.	<p>Implement a needs assessment and consider actions required to promote public transport. <b>(Refer to Strategy B9.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Compile and implement an Integrated Transport Plan. <b>(Refer to Strategy B9.2, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Promote human well-being by means of urban renewal and upgrading. <b>(Refer to Strategy E5, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Establish after-hours medical services. <b>(Refer to Strategy M3.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Investigate the need for multi-purpose community centres and promote the multi-purpose use of existing facilities.</p> <p>Develop/upgrade sport and recreation facilities, and playgrounds.</p> <p>Promote awareness of recreational opportunities by unorganised sports and outdoor recreation in nature.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with Dept of Transport.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with Dept of Transport.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM and relevant departments.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with relevant Departments.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM, relevant sports organisations and tourism bureaus.</p>
27.1-09	Promote social and community upliftment.	<p>Institute programmes to address drug and alcohol abuse, public violence, vandalism, gangsterism and negative group pressure, sex- related crimes. <b>(Refer to Strategy M1.3, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Institute a community care programme with emphasises on the optimisation of service delivery to the elderly, disabled and children. <b>(Refer to Strategy M2.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Institute programmes to control population growth.</p>	To be facilitated by Dept of Welfare in collaboration with community services, the ODM and local municipalities.
27.1-10	Promote the safety and security of all communities.	<p>Ensure effective law enforcement.</p> <p>Promote Rural Protection through for example Rural Sector Policing / Farm Watch. <b>(Refer to Strategy E17.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM and local municipalities in collaboration with community services.</p> <p>“</p>

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-10	Promote the safety and security of all communities.	<p>Institute measure to safeguard the N2 section which runs through the ODM. <b>(Refer to Strategy E17.2, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Establish municipal, including environmental, courts and Police Services. <b>(Refer to Strategy E18, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Establish facilities for juvenile delinquents in order to separate them from seasoned criminals during detention. <b>(Refer to Strategy E19, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Institute measures to combat poaching and theft of livestock.</p> <p>Consider provision of shelters for hikers.</p> <p>Investigate the need for zebra crossing and speed humps.</p> <p>Secure all public facilities that are used by especially children and elderly, e.g. fencing of library.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM and local municipalities in collaboration with community services and relevant state departments.</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>To be facilitated by the Dept. of Justice and SAP in collaboration with the ODM.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM and local municipalities in collaboration with community services and relevant state departments.</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p>
27.1-11	Support vulnerable groups in the community.	<p>Institute protection programmes for rape and child abuse victims. <b>(Refer to Strategy M4.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Provide sufficient shelters for women, children, e.g. safehouses, shelters for the destitute. <b>(Refer to Strategy M4.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM and local municipalities in collaboration with community and welfare services.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM and local municipalities in collaboration with community and welfare services.</p>
27.1-12	Promote a healthy environment. <b>(Refer to Strategy M1, Overberg IDP)</b>	<p>Provide primary health care, especially to marginalized communities.</p> <p>Investigate the need for a HIV/AIDS/STD project and consider including it in the school curricula. <b>(Refer to Strategy M1.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Special care should be given to the care of AIDS orphans.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM and Category B municipalities in collaboration with community and welfare services.</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p>

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-12	Promote a healthy environment. <b>(Refer to Strategy M1, Overberg IDP)</b>	<p>Institute measures to help combat tuberculosis. <b>(Refer to Strategy M1.2, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Promote community involvement in partnership with faith-based organisations, NGOs and traditional and private health workers.</p> <p>Consider the viability of an one-stop chronic help system. <b>(Refer to Strategy M1.4, Overberg IDP)</b></p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM and Category B municipalities in collaboration with community and welfare services.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM and Category B municipalities in collaboration with community and welfare services.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM and Category B municipalities in collaboration with community and welfare services.</p>
27.1-13	Decrease subject poverty.	<p>Create self-employment opportunities (e.g. promote SMMEs).</p> <p>Provide credit facilities or minimum financial requirements to establish low cost housing or set up a business enterprise.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by Dept of Welfare in collaboration with community services, the ODM and Category B municipalities.</p> <p>Community services must facilitate co-operation with <i>National Housing Finance Corporation, Mortgage Indemnity Fund</i> and the <i>Small Business Development Corporation</i>.</p>
27.1-14	Promote Human Development by means of empowerment of the managerial group. <b>(Refer to Strategy M5, Overberg IDP)</b>	<p>Ensure further establishment, development and empowerment of Health and Welfare Committees. <b>(Refer to Strategy M5.1, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Appoint and train community Health Workers. <b>(Refer to Strategy M5.2, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Provide support to the Social Workers Forum.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by Dept of Welfare in collaboration with community services, the ODM and local municipalities.</p> <p>To be facilitated by Dept of Welfare in collaboration with community services, the ODM and local municipalities.</p> <p>To be facilitated by Dept of Welfare in collaboration with community services, the ODM and local municipalities.</p>

#### KEY ISSUE: DEVELOPING THE ECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Create a sustainable growing economic environment for all the communities of the ODM.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-15	Ensure essential community and public facilities necessary for economic growth.	<p>Provide banking, postal, health, building and other business services.</p> <p>Promote access to technology, better communication services, etc</p>	To be facilitated by the ODM, local municipalities in collaboration with the various relevant institutions.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-16	Promote proper regional planning for economic development.	<p>Finish and implement the regional economic development framework. <b>(Refer to Strategy E6, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Carry out a Strategic Environmental Assessment in order to ascertain environmental carrying capacity and test sustainable development. <b>(Refer to Strategy E8, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Promote the enhancement of local enterprise's competitive ability.</p> <p>Establish the New Knowledge Economy for the Western Cape in ODM.</p> <p>Implement a structured programme for the promotion of investment in the ODM and continued money scouting.</p> <p>Promote economic diversity in especially the coastal areas of the ODM.</p> <p>Support existing projects to promote the economic development of the district, e.g. Elgin / Grabouw Development Forum.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM, Category B municipalities in collaboration with the various relevant institutions.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM, Category B municipalities in collaboration with the various relevant institutions.</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p>

#### KEY ISSUE: EDUCATION AND TRAINING

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Create equal opportunities for professional education and skills training to facilitate sustainable human resource development and to allow access to the available job opportunities in the study area.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-17	Maintain community schools, farm and other rural schools.	Establish community based ' <i>centers for further education and training</i> '.	To be facilitated by Dept of Education in collaboration with communities and landowners.
27.1-18	Provide access to technical and skills training institutions.	<p>Establish training needs and communicate with training centers.</p> <p>Apply the guidelines of the Green Paper on <i>Skills Development Strategy for Economic and Employment Growth in South Africa</i>.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by employers.</p> <p>“</p>
27.1-19	Establish a culture of learning.	Develop and institute educational programmes to create a learning culture.	To be facilitated by Department of Education in collaboration with communities and landowners.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-19	Establish a culture of learning.	Upgrade and maintain public libraries.	To be facilitated by Department of Education in collaboration with communities and landowners.
27.1-20	Adapt curricula to provide career-orientated education.	Include 'technical' subjects and / or skills training in school curricula, e.g. woodwork, catering and tourism.  Teach agricultural science with specific reference to local agricultural enterprises.	To be facilitated by school governing bodies in collaboration with local industry and the Dept of Education.  “
27.1-21	Adapt curricula to provide environmental-orientated education.	Sustainable environmental management based on bioregional planning objectives and the introduction thereof in educational sectors. <b>(Refer to Strategy E1, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be facilitated by school governing bodies in collaboration with local industry and the Dept of Education.

**KEY ISSUE: LAND REFORM**

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Regulate land reform in accordance with the *Land Reform Programme*.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-22	Change negative paradigms and attitudes of I&APs.	Institute effective communication to change unjustified negative perceptions regarding land reform.  Institute land reform in accordance with acceptable guidelines so as to avoid negative perceptions and criticism.	To be facilitated by Dept of Land Affairs in collaboration with ODAC and local community forums.  To be facilitated by Dept of Land Affairs in collaboration with ODAC.
27.1-23	Ensure public participation in land reform programmes.	Institute educational programmes to promote public and NGO support and involvement in <i>equitable</i> and <i>sustainable</i> land reform.	To be facilitated by Dept of Land Affairs in collaboration with ODAC and local community forums.
27.1-24	Regulate land reform in accordance with ecological requirements.	Institute measures to ensure maintenance of productivity of agricultural land.  Institute compulsory IEM and EIA, <i>master plans</i> , management systems for any land reform proposal.  Conduct an inventory of state-owned land for possible redistribution.  Institute an integrated land reform strategy / plan for the ODM.	To be facilitated by Dept of Land Affairs in collaboration with ODAC.  To be facilitated by Dept of Land Affairs in collaboration with ODAC and local community forums.  To be facilitate by the ODM in collaboration with ODAC and the Department of Land Affairs.  “

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-25	Impose development legislation and standard development procedures on all land reform projects.	Institute compulsory IEM and EIA, <i>master plans</i> , management systems, building standards, professional environmental control, rehabilitation plans, environmental audit in accordance with ISO 14001 standards.	To be facilitated by Dept of Land Affairs in collaboration with ODAC DEAT, WCNCB & SANParks.
27.1-26	Assist emergent farms with financing of new projects.	Explore all potential credit options, such as land acquisition grants, housing subsidies for government workers, Provincial Housing Board subsidies, loans from the <i>National Housing Finance Corporation</i> , and the <i>Mortgage Indemnity Fund</i> ( <b>Refer to par 26.2.1</b> ).	To be facilitated by Dept of Land Affairs in collaboration with ODAC and local community forums.
27.1-27	Promote capacity building of emergent farmers.	Institute compulsory educational programmes and training courses for emergent farmers.	To be facilitated by Dept of Land Affairs in collaboration with ODAC and local community forums.

#### KEY ISSUE: COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT

**SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:** Establish constructive involvement of communities in the local government.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-28	Provide equal opportunities for all people to be involved in local government.	Implement bioregional planning and management throughout the ODM, with specific reference to neighbourhood area planning & management described par 28.6.	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with local municipalities.
27.1-29	Provide equal opportunities for building the capacity to be involved in local government.	<p>Institute compulsory information and educational programmes and training courses for all municipal councillors.</p> <p>Institute compulsory information and educational programmes and training courses for municipal executive officials.</p> <p>Institute information and educational programmes and training courses for the general public.</p> <p>Establish a Spatial Planning Information System as directed by the policy document <i>Bioregional Planning Framework for the Western Cape</i>.</p>	<p>To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with local municipalities.</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p>

<b>KEY ISSUE: COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT IN ENVIRONMENTAL PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT</b>			
<b>SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:</b>		Promote constructive involvement of communities in the rehabilitation of degraded areas and the involvement of landowners and the general public in sustainable land management and socio-economic development planning.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
27.1-30	Institute a community-based approach to solving environmental problems and protecting the future of natural resources.	Implement conservation programmes such as the <i>Australian Land Care Programme</i> , which is at present being investigated by the Dept of Agriculture.  Promote community involvement and compliance with environmental planning and management. <b>(Refer to Strategy E3.1, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with local municipalities and the Dept of Agriculture.  To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with local municipalities, WCNCB and SANParks.
27.1-31	Institute a community-based approach to solving environmental problems.	Implement bioregional planning and management with reference to neighbourhood planning and management.	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with the local municipalities and the provincial Department of Agriculture.
27.1-32	Promote environmental health to protect inhabitants and contribute to economic development. <b>(Refer to Strategy M6, Overberg IDP)</b>	Ensure safe disposal of medical waste. <b>(Refer to Strategy M6.1, Overberg IDP)</b>  Issue competency certificates for food processing premises. <b>(Refer to Strategy M6.2, Overberg IDP)</b>  Institute training programme in respect of hazardous substances. <b>(Refer to Strategy M6.3, Overberg IDP)</b>  Investigate viability of the Parmalat Dairy Export Project. <b>(Refer to Strategy M6.4, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with local municipalities and relevant departments.  To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with local municipalities and relevant departments.  To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with local municipalities and relevant departments.  To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with local municipalities and relevant departments.

<b>KEY ISSUE: COMMUNITY EMPOWERMENT</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Promote sustainable community empowerment through the efficient use of public resources.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
27.1-33	Institute sustainable public-private-community partnerships.	Implement community empowerment initiatives based on the principles of the <i>Franschhoek Empowerment and Development Initiative (FEDI)</i> <sup>36</sup> . <a href="http://www.fedi.co.za">www.fedi.co.za</a>	To be facilitated by the local municipalities in collaboration with the ODM and the affected communities.

<sup>36</sup> FEDI is a model of private sector / public sector / empowerment co-operation, the purpose of which is to unlock benefits for all participants through the synergies created. It is also a unique new approach to land reform, provision of housing, and provision of previously disadvantaged people with access to, and participation in the mainstream economy. FEDI includes the development of the former Franschhoek municipal commonage by the private sector, in

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
27.1-33	Institute sustainable public-private-community partnerships.	Undertake a comprehensive survey throughout the ODM to identify opportunities for the implementation of such trilateral initiatives.	To be facilitated by the local municipalities in collaboration with the ODM and the affected communities.

### 27.1.3 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 65 summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to the **community development** including the provision of essential services, which plays an important role in the economic development of the ODM. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 65: Human Resource Development and Economic Sectors: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

REPORT 1: OVERBERG IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (ODM, 2002)	
ISSUE: HUMAN RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.1	Job creation should be promoted in every possible field. The Overberg Indigenous People Economic Empowerment Company should be involved in actions. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02 and 27.1-03)</b>
1.2	Reconciliation of the aspirations and needs of a younger, economically active generation (mostly Coloureds and Blacks in the coastal towns) that is in favour of development and the creation of new job opportunities with those of an older, retired and economically inactive group (primarily Whites), who are in favour of conservation and the retention of the <i>status quo</i> . <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02 and 27.1-03)</b>
1.3	The percentage of women reflected by the demography of the ODM and the low level of empowerment they have reached makes special empowerment projects for especially women from the Coloured and Black communities necessary. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02)</b>

co-operation with the Municipality. A fundamentally important aspect is the extent of the community's involvement in and support for the initiative.

The key advantages of FEDI as a tri-lateral development effort include the following:

- Enabling the Municipality to subsidise much-needed low-cost and medium-cost housing.
- Ensuring that the municipal rates base is significantly expanded, thus improving the financial health of the Municipality.
- Ensuring that all land claims in Franschhoek were definitively settled.
- Developing top-class recreational/leisure infrastructure and amenities, which will make Franschhoek an even more attractive tourist destination.
- Enhancing employment and entrepreneurial opportunities, particularly for the previously disadvantaged. In this regard, FEDI will provide the people of Franschhoek, especially the previously disadvantaged, with opportunities to participate, in a sustainable manner, in business and gain a foothold in the mainstream economy of the Franschhoek Valley. These opportunities will be created across a wide spectrum of business activities including agriculture, agri-commercial activities, tourism and various resort enterprises.



No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.4	<p>Increase the tempo of establishment of sustainable small businesses. A structured programme to promote SMME's should be implemented on a regional basis. It should allow for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) The development of entrepreneurship over a wide spectrum.</li> <li>b) A conducive regulatory framework for SMME development on both regional and local levels.</li> <li>c) Improvement of business infrastructure, e.g. hive development for utilisation by entrepreneurs.</li> <li>d) Financing and information with regard to financing.</li> <li>e) Mentorship and advisory services by e.g. chambers of commerce.</li> <li>f) Marketing of SMME products and services.</li> </ul> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-03)</b></p>
1.5	<p>Establish labour bureaus for the ODM. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02)</b></p>
1.6	<p>Transfer knowledge and skills and develop entrepreneurs. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-03)</b></p>
1.7	<p>Opening up of financial resources for beginners and small business people. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-03)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: DEVELOP SOCIAL ENVIRONMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.8	<p>Reconciliation between the demand for service and financial shortcomings. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>
1.9	<p>Separation of emergency medical services and the need for ordinary transport and the prevention of misuse of ambulance services. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>
1.10	<p>Promotion of the establishment of medical bus (combi) service for ordinary patients. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>
1.11	<p>Establishment of decentralised emergency medical service. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>
1.12	<p>Give attention to staff shortages and utilise reservists and volunteers as well as extended utilisation of health workers. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>
1.13	<p>Focus on the provision of after-hours services in communities where no medical services are available outside of normal office hours. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>
1.14	<p>Essential services must be provided at affordable rates to the poorest part of the population. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategy 27.1-08)</b></p>
1.15	<p>Attention should be given to the sharp gaps in the standard of living, income levels and service delivery to members of different population groups. If not this can give rise to tension. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08 and 27.1-14 to 27.1-16)</b></p>
1.16	<p>The delivery of a wide range of social services and satellite services in rural areas can contribute to the uplifting and development of rural inhabitants and can at the same time create opportunities for entrepreneurs to deliver such services. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>
1.17	<p>There is an enormous need for multi-purpose community sentra that are affordable for utilisation by especially Black and Coloured communities. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.18	Especially the marginalized communities are still unaware of the recreational opportunities offered by unorganised sports and outdoor recreation in nature. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
1.19	Consideration should be given to the demographics of the ODM and the impact that the growing older and younger population can have on future development, with special emphasise on future population growth, pressure on facilities such as clinics, schools, etc., higher dependency ration's and lower per capita income and standard of living. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08 and 27.1-09)</b>
1.20	There is no departmental regional social services office in the Overberg and to deliver a satisfying service from Worcester is difficult. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-14)</b>
1.21	Social service delivery is not planned and co-ordinated in an integrated manner and this contributes to the waste and mismanagement of limited financial resources. Welfare services should be development driven. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-14)</b>
1.22	The promotion of active involvement of clients in society and available services/projects. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09)</b>
1.23	Utilisation of clients to ensure optimal service delivery. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09)</b>
1.24	The constant addressing of the needs of the elderly and disabled on the agendas of the Health and Welfare Committees. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09)</b>
1.25	Marketing of multi-purpose service centurms. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
1.26	Establishment of a system of elderly and infant care where the first mentioned group takes care of the latter group and they, in return, stimulates the former. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09)</b>
1.27	Special attention to the care of Aids orphans. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-12)</b>
1.28	Consideration should be given to the large number of social pensioners and the high level of income transfer it is causing on a regional level. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-13 and 27.1-14)</b>
1.29	Special attention should be given to the vulnerable groups in the community and a system of home care and easy access to medical assistance and care should be provided as soon as possible. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09, 27.1-11, 27.1-12 and 27.1-14)</b>
1.30	Alcohol and drug abuse are playing a significant role in the increasing number of ordinary assault and assault with the intent to do grievous bodily harm. It is important to address the causes of these social evils, rather than only addressing the symptoms. People's circumstances will have to be changed as well as the dependency syndrome. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09)</b>
1.31	The promotion of responsible use of alcohol, with the emphasise on Fetal Alcohol Syndrome. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09)</b>
1.32	Provide a one-stop chronic help system based on home care, central control points and optimal occupation and utilisation of existing facilities. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-12)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.33	Involve non-governmental organisations and traditional and private health workers. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-12)</b>
1.34	Include programmes on AIDS and the use of alcohol in school programmes. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09 and 27.1-12)</b>
1.35	Cases of HIV/Aids are clearly on the rise, while of all the notifiable diseases TB is the biggest health threat for the region. As a result of poverty and other social factors the lifestyle of members of the Black and Coloured populations are often contributing to the mentioned diseases and therefore they are the worst hit. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-12)</b>
1.36	All role players are not initiating HIV/Aids programmes in an integrated manner, while there are not instruments to measure the occurrence and impact of the disease. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-12)</b>
1.37	The accomplishment of mobility for the poorest and most disadvantaged segments of the population through the provision of transport infrastructure. Special attention should also be given to the transport of patients. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
1.38	Klipdale, Protém, Stormsvlei, Buffeljagsstrand, Tesselaardsdal, Buffeljagsrivier, Malagas, Infanta and Ouplaas are mostly exclusively inhabited by Coloureds, most of whom do not have their own transport. In some places a public bus service is available. In other cases residents have to make use of expensive taxi services to reach the larger towns. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
1.39	Crime prevention and rural protection, with special attention to the specific problems identified by the SA Police Force, should be regarded as priority for economic development. It is important that the national prioritisation for the combating of crime take into account the local circumstances. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
1.40	The lack of local facilities for the detention of juvenile offenders means that they have to be transported to Cape Town, thus contributing to loss of time and manpower. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
1.41	No shelters for victims of violence within family context. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-11)</b>
1.42	Local authorities do not buy in with the NCPS, the White Paper and other planning actions and are not planning together with SAPS and Department of Correctional Services (e.g. poor planning of residential areas promotes crime). <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
1.43	Contraband trade and theft of livestock is increasing at a high rate. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
1.44	Poaching is spreading throughout the coastal region of the ODM and is currently out of control. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
1.45	The acknowledgement that poverty gaps have a direct impact on the level of development and that it will be difficult to uplift the Coloured and Black population should poverty not be alleviated in the short term and wiped out completely in the longer term. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-13)</b>
1.46	Pilot projects in respect of alleviation of poverty and job creation are not really performing as a result of the business sector not being involved, insufficient research and communities not accepting ownership. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02, 27.1-03 and 27.1-13)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.47	<p>The raising of the Human Development Index for Coloured and Black inhabitants to levels which is comparable and competitive with those of whites, as well as the equalising of the HDI figures for rural and urban areas.</p> <p>This should be done through:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The creation of more job opportunities</li> <li>The creation of 'safety nets' for seasonal unemployed and for unskilled &amp; low skilled farm workers losing their jobs as a result of droughts and other structural problems in the agricultural sector</li> <li>The wiping out of notable differences between services in towns and between towns and rural areas</li> <li>Further diversification of the regional economy</li> <li>Special training and empowerment strategy</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to various SDF Strategies 27.1-01, 27.1-02 and 27.1-16)</b></p>
1.48	<p>Poverty should be alleviated through job creation and should be regarded as cross cutting dimension and should therefore receive attention in all IDP projects. The process of the employment of local labour should be emphasised.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02, 27.1-03 and 27.1-13)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: DEVELOPING THE ECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.49	<p>Make provision for a regional Economic Development Framework that will establish the principles of diversification, establishment of value adding industries and sustainable development.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b></p>
1.50	<p>One of the biggest problems is the fact that the three former mission stations, from a population figure viewpoint, developed into full and equal towns, but still offer few incentives for businesses to settle here. This can be attributed to poverty amongst the mainly coloured communities and contributes to their suffering and hardship.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-01, 27.1-02, 27.1-15 and 27.1-16)</b></p>
1.51	<p>The key for larger volumes of economic activity is an increased level of investment in the more promising economic growth sectors already identified or still to be identified. With this objective in mind it is necessary that the ODM (if necessary in co-operation with adjacent regions) implement a structured programme for the promotion of investment and an approach of continued money scouting.</p> <p>The programme should entail the following steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The possible identification of more promising economic sectors and sub-sectors and the compilation of a short list, in order of priority, of the most promising ones. At the same time it should be noted that sector opportunities are dated phenomena and that sector evaluation must therefore be a continuous and dynamic process.</li> <li>The identification of those new international and national investors that would most probably be interested in opportunities in the ODM or a specific part of the district municipal area, as well as of regional operators who want to expand or shift facilities.</li> <li>An analysis of the decision-making criteria that potential investors would use in their evaluation of potential opportunities.</li> <li>Ensuring that the local investment environment is as conducive as possible for new investment. Practical guidelines include the provision of useful local business information through a central data bank, the removal of unnecessary rules, red tape and planning obstacles, incentives linked to the availability of land, local adaptability in respect of rates and taxes, provision of capital and other project input.</li> <li>The compilation of an integrated long-term marketing program that must be executed within specific timeframes to have the best chance for success. It should include personal contact between representatives from the ODM and potential investors and should also, from the start, involve potential employees in the specific sector in the contact process.</li> <li>The creation of a regional prospectus that can introduce all investment possibilities within the region.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b></p>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.52	<p>The second strategy with regard to growth sectors should be aimed at the enhancement of the competitive abilities of local enterprises in and outside the ODM by encouraging them to do things within their specific sector right and in a competitive manner.</p> <p>The following are important elements of the strategy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) By attracting new investment to the ODM successful operators will raise local competition and standards within a specific sector.</li> <li>b) Intensive interaction between enterprises in different sub-sectors within the ODM will drastically increase their competitiveness. Such a 'cluster' effect can be reached by using local marketing agencies to promote and market the products of local manufacturers, preferably by making use of other local services.</li> <li>c) Specific attention to the transfer of knowledge and technology to local enterprises and especially also to first entrants to a sector. Contact should be established with knowledge and technology in the nearby Cape metropolitan area and elsewhere, in order to expedite the tempo of growth in technical and management skills in the rural areas.</li> </ul> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b></p>
1.53	<p>The resources base of the ODM is probably limited to attract a single massive industrial investment. Therefore a strategy must be put in place to rather promote stimulation and investment within each of the potential growth sectors and to utilise the ODM's potential areas as best as possible.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b></p>
1.54	<p>Action with regard to the regional economy should not take place in isolation but in co-operation within a broader spectrum. The new Knowledge Economy for the Western Cape should be established in the Overberg.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b></p>
1.55	<p>Information and knowledge about the economy should be gathered and put at the disposal of especially marginalized inhabitants.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b></p>
1.56	<p>Although a reasonable number of banks and building societies are available, towns like Stanford, Genadendal, Greyton, Suurbraak, Elim and Botrivier, with populations of 1 200 to 3 600 per town, have no facilities or even ATM services. This is adversely affecting economic development and is disadvantaging local inhabitants.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-15)</b></p>
1.57	<p>The rural settlements of Klipdale, Protem, Stormsvlei, Buffeljagtstrand, Tesselaarsdal (810 inhabitants), Buffeljagtsrivier, Malagas, Infanta and Ouplaas have no or almost no trade related services available, while the former mission stations of Genadendal, Suurbraak and Elim are completely under-provided for.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-15)</b></p>
1.58	<p>It is important to promote a climate that can stimulate economic growth, with special emphasis on a safe and stable environment, education and social service delivery.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-01 to 27.1-31)</b></p>
1.59	<p>Businesses in coastal towns are hampered by the seasonal demand for services. Attention should be given to seasonal spending patterns in coastal areas that are inhibiting economic development in the trade sector.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b></p>
1.60	<p>Promote access to technology and empowerment for utilisation.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b></p>
1.61	<p>Ensure access to better communication services in especially rural areas.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>

<b>ISSUE: EDUCATION AND TRAINING</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.62	The development, on a broader community basis, of the ODM's human resource potential as the spark that can light up the regional economy, with special reference to the improvement and maintenance of infrastructure and facilities, improved service delivery, enhancement of qualifications and skills and attention to functional illiteracy. Education and training should improve the basic capacity of individuals to make choices, should enhance their human dignity and have an impact on vocational spread within the ODM. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17 to 27.1-21)</b>
1.63	The accomplishing of choices for the poorest and most disadvantaged segments of the population through education and training initiatives. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17 to 27.1-21)</b>
1.64	The fact that numerous of the ODM's social problems can be addressed in the infant and very early stages of the development of children is emphasised. Through development and stimulation they can be released from a continued marginalised lifestyle. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17 to 27.1-21)</b>
1.65	The relatively small number of high schools are not evenly situated throughout the ODM and therefore a large percentage of learners from disadvantaged communities are leaving school in grades 7 or 8. For example, Overstrand, which has the largest population is under-supplied in respect of school facilities. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17)</b>
1.66	The set policy for teacher/learner ratios is wrongfully disadvantaging schools in rural areas such as the ODM and contributes to the closure of schools in smaller towns. This often has a devastating effect on local economies. It also deprive rural learners from cultural stimulation when subjects such as music and singing lessons are abolished and it can eventually adversely affect the level of development in the ODM. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17)</b>
1.67	Although the rural areas are already sparsely provided with facilities, a large number of farm schools were closed since 1998, while others are at risk of being closed down. On the other hand there is a lack of bus transport for many learners, while existing services are poor and often even dangerous. It is a disadvantage for the children of farm workers, while this is the group with the lowest HDI. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17)</b>
1.68	The difference in the standard and quality of facilities and level of education for the various racial groups is still large. The situation in tradition Black schools is the worst, while it is the group for whom the largest growth in numbers can be expected and who has the lowest HDI figure. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17 to 27.1-21)</b>
1.69	The lack of technical and tertiary institutions is emphasised. This also influences the training of the broad adult disadvantaged population in basic life skills such as reading, writing, planning of a budget, etc. If community colleges are established it is important that they focus on practical training and empowerment of people in order for them to find their feet in the economy. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17)</b>
1.70	Pilot a project for the provision of training and empowerment, preceded by proper investigation and planning in order to avoid duplication and address the needs of all the sectors. Important to obtain the co-operation of the 4 Category B municipalities. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17)</b>
1.71	Try to obtain unspent funds from the skills development authorities (CETAS) of the various sectors in an orderly fashion for spending in the ODM. The contributions of individual sector role players are often too little to really have an impact should it be applied individually. Should all the contributions from the different sectors be pooled together for training and empowerment much more can be attained. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-01 and 27.1-19)</b>

<b>ISSUE: LAND REFORM</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.72	A land audit to ascertain what land is available for the settlement of new farmers and for special development projects is essential. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-24)</b>
1.73	The unequal shareholding between Whites and previously disadvantaged groups with respect to land as most important agricultural resource should be corrected. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-22 to 27.1-27)</b>
1.74	It is important that local communities obtain land rights in order to enable them to enter the economy from a basis of surety of tenure. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-22 to 27.1-27)</b>
<b>ISSUE: COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT IN ENVIRONMENTAL PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.75	Implement and co-ordinate environmental management policy in order to ensure sustainable management of the environment. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-30 and 27.1-31)</b>

<b>REPORT 2: THEEWATERSKLOOF IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (Theewaterskloof Municipality, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: DEVELOPING THE SOCIAL ENVIRONMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.1	Renovating and upgrading of hostels, e.g. Kromco Hostel. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08 and 25.3-05)</b>
2.2	The development of multi-purpose centres for human development, which provide for <i>inter alia</i> skills training, cultural activities, indoor sport, craft market where needed, e.g. Grabouw. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
2.3	Identification of appropriate sites for the development of crèches. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08, 27.1-09 and 27.1-11)</b>
2.4	Identification of church sites where necessary. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
2.5	HIV/Aids programme and develop a drug centre. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-12)</b>
2.6	Construction of community halls where needed, e.g Botriver, Voorstekraal. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
2.7	Investigate the need for the construction for play parks. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
2.8	The location of the South African Police Service and Health Service must be investigated to bring it closer to the community. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08 and 27.1-10)</b>
2.9	There is a shortage of manpower at the SAP. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.10	Provision of additional resources (manpower and equipment) required policing the extensive rural and urban jurisdiction. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
2.11	Construction of shelters where farm workers can wait for their transport. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
2.12	Upgrading of degraded cemeteries. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
2.13	Eliminate alcohol and drug related crime as well as organised crime. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09)</b>
2.14	Establish neighbourhood watch. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
2.15	Investigate private/municipal policing in urban areas to complement existing Farm Watch such as a Neighbourhood Watch system. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
2.16	Strategies with regards to crime prevention programme and safety. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10 and 27.1-11)</b>
2.17	Investigate the need for municipal police. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
2.18	Emergency Medical Services are needed and existing medical facilities must be upgraded to include a trauma centre. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08 and 27.1-12)</b>
2.19	There is a need for places of safety and support for traumatised people like abused women and rape victims. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-11)</b>
2.20	There is a need for care systems for HIV/Aids patients, cancer patients and TB patients, as well as homecare provision or assistance programme. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-12)</b>
2.21	Establish a street children programme. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09 and 27.1-11)</b>
2.22	Establish care facilities for the elderly where there is a need. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09)</b>
2.23	Training programme for women with alcohol problems. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-09)</b>
2.24	Establish fully equipped clinics with full time physicians and ambulance services in the areas where it is needed. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08 and 27.1-12)</b>
2.25	Investigate the need and feasibility of a daycare hospital in for example Genadendal. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
2.26	Establish Hospice programme and trauma facility to housing terminally ill patients. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-11)</b>



No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.27	Provision of human resources and equipment to promote effective social development including training of community motivators in promoting early child development, skills development, etc. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-14)</b>
2.28	Upgrade ambulance service – additional manpower and equipment required to cope with emergencies as well as transport of patients to Hottentots Holland regional hospital. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-14)</b>
2.29	Development, upgrading and maintaining of sport grounds. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
2.30	Supply of mobile library or make use of existing classrooms. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
2.31	Employ social workers where there is a need. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-14)</b>
2.32	Investigate the need for old age homes and establish them where appropriate. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08 and 27.1-09)</b>
2.33	Maintain public toilets and provide parking where there is a shortage. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
2.34	Upgrade the public transport system. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
2.35	Establishing offices to render services to the community. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-14)</b>
<b>ISSUE: DEVELOPING THE ECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.36	Identify appropriate office space and develop business premises. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-15)</b>
2.37	Draft an economical development framework for small businesses. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b>
2.38	Promote small businesses – identification of a beehive market. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02 and 27.1-03)</b>
2.39	Promote a LED strategy. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b>
2.40	Draft investment plans for various towns. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b>
2.41	Find ways to create employment, to promote economic development and promotion of tourism. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02 and 27.1-03)</b>
2.42	Develop small businesses in alleys and backyards of existing businesses inside the existing businesses precincts. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-011 to 27.1-03)</b>
2.43	Local contractors must get preference for the tenders issues for development projects. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.44	Actively support and assist the Elgin Grabouw Development Forum in drafting and implementing a strategic economic development plan as well as marketing and promoting on a national and international level, investment opportunities, tourist destinations, etc. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-16)</b>
2.45	Preparation of Human Development Framework to address the following: i) Training and capacity building programme in all sectors of the community. ii) To secure focus on the community development of women and youth. iii) To employ a community developer in each town. iv) To promote transparency in the processes of the council. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-01)</b>
2.46	Promote job creations projects such as needle work, ground for a vegetable garden, arts & culture, timber work, brick machines, clean & green projects, etc. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02 and 27.1-03)</b>
<b>ISSUE: EDUCATION AND TRAINING</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.47	There is a need for basic education for adults. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17 to 27.1-21)</b>
2.48	Investigate the establishment of education/resource centres were appropriate. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17)</b>
2.49	Promote ABET classes. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17)</b>
2.50	Maintaining and upgrading the libraries. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-19)</b>
2.51	The development of identified local primary schools into high schools. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17)</b>
2.52	There is a need for sport facilities at schools. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-06 and 27.1-08)</b>
2.53	Investigate the feasibility of the establishment of a Technical School/College, specifically aimed at: i) Agricultural sector (agronomy, mechanical, electrical, electronic, management, etc.) ii) Tourism sector (catering, hospitality, management, etc.) iii) Business sector (management, IT, marketing, etc.) iv) Adult education (ABET, parent/learner support system, etc.) v) Art & Culture (performing arts, etc.) <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17 to 27.1-21)</b>
2.54	Ensure the safety of school children, such as transport to schools. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
<b>ISSUE: LAND REFORM</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.55	Land reform programme, which can identify land for agricultural purposes. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-22 to 27.1-27)</b>

<b>REPORT 3: OVERSTRAND IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Overstrand Municipality, 2003/2004)	
<b>ISSUE: HOUSING AND COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.1	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide for the facilitation of a sustainable housing development process for the socio-economic well being of the area.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Establish uniform data basis.</li> <li>2) Identification of Housing Projects.</li> <li>3) Identification of Land.</li> <li>4) Planning of sustainable Housing Project.</li> <li>5) Administration of Phasing out programmes.</li> <li>6) Facilitate basic infrastructure for transit camps.</li> <li>7) Administration of Masakhane programme.</li> <li>8) Conduct regular housing surveys.</li> <li>9) Administration of Housing related enquiries.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: SKILLS DEVELOPMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.2	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To organize and implement accredited training and development programs for all employees and councilors to ensure professional, effective and efficient service delivery to the public.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Nominate the Skills Development Facilitator (SDF).</li> <li>2) SDF obtain training information for needs analysis.</li> <li>3) Communicate with Departments to finalize strategic priorities.</li> <li>4) SDF facilitate the development of a new Skills Plan.</li> <li>5) Training Committee approves new Skills Plan.</li> <li>6) SDF communicate new Skills Plan to all employees.</li> <li>7) Ensure regular Training Committee meetings.</li> <li>8) Implementation of the New Skills Plan.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-18)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: EMPLOYMENT EQUITY PLAN</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.3	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To redress demographic imbalances in the Overstrand Municipal workforce in terms of the relevant EE legislation.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Addressing under-representation of designated groups in terms of the targets set out in the EE plan.</li> <li>2) Identifying and developing strategies for the elimination of employment barriers.</li> <li>3) Developing operating strategies for the achievement of numerical goals and timetables for the implementation of affirmative action measures.</li> <li>4) Establish procedures to address and resolve disputes regarding the implementation and enforcement of the employment equity plan.</li> <li>5) Compile a draft Employment Equity Plan.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02)</b></p>

<b>ISSUE: GENDER EQUITY</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.4	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To ensure that the municipality's strategies and programmes sufficiently consider the needs of marginalized population groups, in order to deal effectively with gender equity.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Inside local government authority structures: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) To strive to make local government structures more representative of the community and eradicate existing inequalities by including women on all the different levels of local government.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2) In the community: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) To use women as a vital source of information to determine the priority needs and issues in the community.</li> <li>b) To work in close co-operation with community organizations, including existing women's groups.</li> <li>c) To include women in strategic planning and budgeting processes.</li> <li>d) To play a leading role to elevate the status of women in communities by raising public awareness about gender inequalities.</li> <li>e) To publicly denounce violence against women and children and support the establishment of shelters and other places of safety.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02 and 27.1-11 )</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: HEALTH SERVICES</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.5	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: The provision of a healthy environment and an adequate and sustainable primary health care service to the residents of Overstrand as described in the primary Health Care package for South Africa.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Provision of primary health care services at clinics.</li> <li>2) Provision of environmental health services in the Overstrand municipal area.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-12)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: PUBLIC TRANSPORT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.6	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To facilitate and co-operate with the Overberg District Municipality whose function it is to promote and establish accessible, sustainable and affordable public transport for the communities of Overberg and the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Assist the District Municipality in the compilation of an Integrated Transport Plan.</li> <li>2) Plan and develop taxi ranks.</li> <li>3) Identify bus termini need.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>

<b>ISSUE: TRAFFIC AND LAW ENFORCEMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.7	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: Promotion of road safety in terms of the Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996).</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To ensure implementation of all traffic legislation.</li> <li>2) To provide public awareness.</li> <li>3) To ensure an effective road safety programme.</li> <li>4) To provide effective roadworthy testing.</li> <li>5) To provide an effective K53 centre.</li> <li>6) To ensure an accessible system for the payment of traffic fines.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: SPORT AND RECREATION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.8	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide sustainable, well maintained sports and recreational facilities to the community of the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To execute, projects on capital budget.</li> <li>2) To maintain and upgrade existing facilities.</li> <li>3) To initiate and establish an Overstrand umbrella sports body in co-operation with Province.</li> <li>4) To investigate the possibility for certain sports for private public partnerships.</li> <li>5) Investigate external sources of funding.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: PARKS AND COMMONAGES</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.9	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide and maintain safe, neat and attractive parks in the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To maintain all existing parks within departmental policies and time frames.</li> <li>2) To investigate the promotion of public-private partnerships for the management and maintenance of parks.</li> <li>3) To initiate a policy change towards lawn maintenance, indigenous parks and established parks.</li> <li>4) To upgrade the level of technical and supervisory knowledge and experience.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.10	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To accept the challenge of developmental local government as envisaged in the White Paper on Local Government (March, 1998) by reviewing existing policies and procedures to promote local economic development.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2 have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Research the economic potential of the Overstrand Municipality thoroughly.</li> <li>2) Support the compilation of a computerized database of relevant economic information of the Overstrand.</li> <li>3) Establish Local Economic fora in all four administrative areas as well as for the Overstrand area as a whole to obtain broad support for economic development (Ward Committee representation).</li> </ol>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.10	4) Identify LED projects and establish a process through which a project must go through to ensure broad acceptability and delivery, including the appointment of champions, facilitators and multi-disciplinary task teams. 5) Seek partnerships with funding agencies, such as Kukla Ltd., other municipalities, provincial and national initiatives. 6) Review existing policies and procedures to promote local economic development, e.g. procurement, tax incentives, tariffs and land availability. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-15 to 27.1-16)</b>
<b>ISSUE: PROVISION OF SUFFICIENT LIBRARY SERVICES</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
3.11	The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To provide basic human development (libraries) to the communities of the Overstrand.  The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified: 1) Providing information to the community. 2) Providing literature to the community and promote reading. 3) Accessible service to the community. 4) Improving value of library activities in the community. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-19)</b>

<b>REPORT 4: CAPE AGULHAS IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (CAM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: HUMAN RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
4.1	The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: B8.1) Investigate the need for multi-purpose community centres <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08)</b>
<b>ISSUE: DEVELOP SOCIAL ENVIRONMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
4.2	The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: M2.1) Development of playgrounds and the provision of play facilities M2.2) Develop new recreational facilities M2.3) Maintenance of existing playgrounds <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-06 and 27.1-08)</b>
4.3	The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: M3.1) Ensure effective law enforcement M3.2) Inspect and evaluate the loads of heavy trucks M3.3) Provide shelters for hikers M3.4) Fencing of library M3.5) Provide zebra crossings and speed humps and four way stops <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b>
4.4	The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: M4.1) Create mechanisms to alleviate poverty <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-02 and 27.1-13)</b>

<b>ISSUE: DEVELOPING THE ECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
4.5	The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: E) Create 1 000 new employment opportunities E1.1) Establishment of a investment climate through the creation of work opportunities, the promotion of economic development and the establishment of management partnerships E1.2) Attract small industries through the provision of incentives E1.3) Alien vegetation removal projects <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-15 and 27.1-16)</b>
<b>ISSUE: EDUCATION AND TRAINING</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
4.6	The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects: M5) Provide facilities and support for literacy programmes M5.1) Develop employees. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-17 to 27.1-21)</b>

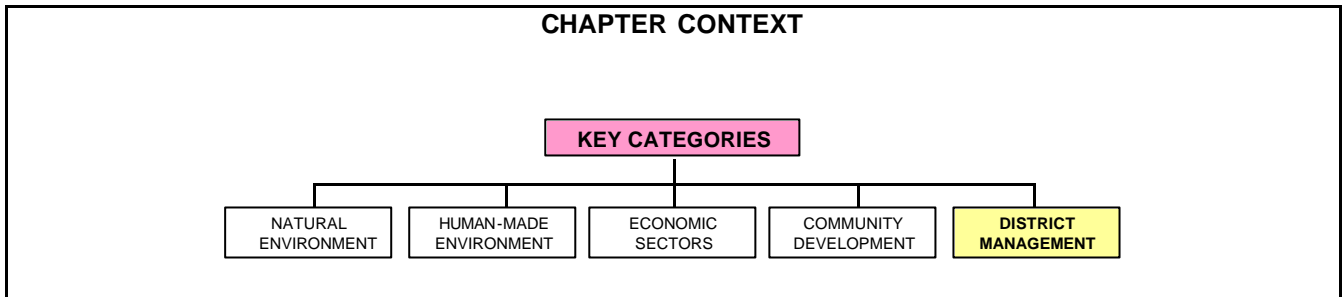
<b>REPORT 5: SWELLENDAM IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (Swellendam Municipality, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: HUMAN DEVELOPMENT, LITTERACY AND ABILITY</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.1	The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy: M5) Promote development, literacy and ability.  The following projects have thus been identified: M5.1) Establish community college M5.2) Provide and expand library facilities in Swellendam, Railton, Barrydale, Suurbraak, Buffeljagtsrivier and smaller rural settlements M5.3) Establish advisory offices M5.4) Transportation for learners to school M5.5) Daycare center / crèche at Railton M5.6) Establishment of multipurpose community center <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-08, 27.1-09, 27.1-17 to 27.1-21)</b>
<b>ISSUE: PROVISION OF HOUSING</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.2	The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy: B1) Comprehensive housing strategy, which states that appropriate housing, is a priority for the survival and development of people. The strategy addresses the provision of housing to people in informal settlements, backyards and farms.  The following projects have thus been identified: B1.1) Identify and become land for development B1.2) Plan projects and provide services B1.3) Financing B1.4) Promote 'spin off' effects <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-05)</b>

<b>ISSUE: PROVISION OF HEALTH SERVICES</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.3	<p>The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy: M1) The provision of specialist health services and the expansion of existing services.</p> <p>The following projects have thus been identified: M1.1) Appoint personnel and create visit-points in smaller towns <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.1-12)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: SPORT AND RECREATION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.4	<p>The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy: M4) Promote sport and recreation in order to create a healthy community, promote co-operation between groups and combat crime.</p> <p>The following projects have thus been identified: M4.1) Compile a sportsplan for the municipal area M4.2) Establish sport facilities at Buffeljagtsrivier M4.3) Establish sport facilities at Swellendam M4.4) Establish sport facilities at Bontebok Primary School and Swellendam Senior Secondary School M4.5) Establish sport facilities at Suurbraak M4.6) Establish sport facilities at Barrydale M4.7) Sport development and identify talent M4.8) Soccer facilities at Swellendam M4.9) Development of natural resources as recreational amenities <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 25.3-06 and 27.1-08)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: ATTENTION TO THE VULNERABLE GROUPS</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.5	<p>The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy: M3) Provide support and special provision to vulnerable groups in the community.</p> <p>The following projects have thus been identified: M3.1) Care giving resorts / place of safety M3.2) Accessibility of buildings and increased employment rate for handicapped persons <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-11)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: SAFETY AND SECURITY</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.6	<p>The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy: E4) Promote safety and security and create an environment which is conducive for human and economic development.</p> <p>The following projects have thus been identified: E4.1) Employ more community police officers: (a) Municipal police and courts and (b) reservists E4.2) Promotion of community involvement E4.3) Social crime prevention through the empowerment of the community E4.4) Safeguard road-users <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-10)</b></p>



<b>ISSUE: ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
5.7	<p>The Swellendam IDP identified the following strategy:</p> <p>E1) Plan for economic development through the drafting of an Economic Development Plan for the whole municipal area. Also consider the drafting of individual sub-plans for every town and/or area and the promotion of specific individual development projects and value adding practices. The strategy includes tourism development as a complete component of economic development.</p> <p>The following projects have thus been identified:</p> <p>E1.1) Draft Economic Development Plan (as well as possible sub-plans for towns and smaller areas)</p> <p>E1.2) Promote specific development projects and value adding practices: Pilot projects for –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Blackberry project for small farmers, Swellendam</li> <li>b) Khoisan cultural town and center and development of tourism training centre</li> <li>c) Removal of alien vegetation</li> <li>d) Development of hiking route along the Koornlandsriver and Huisriver</li> <li>e) Accommodation / tourism project at Wydgeleë and development of Gaikou Lodge</li> <li>f) Hiking route for whale watchers at Infanta and various mountain bike routes</li> <li>g) Development of Rooibrug site for recreation</li> <li>h) Risk management</li> <li>i) Pepper and fruit manufacturing plant at Suurbraak</li> <li>j) Rastafarian development</li> <li>k) Flowerfarm and nursery</li> <li>l) Ostrich manufacturing plant</li> <li>m) Golf estate development</li> </ul> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 27.1-15 and 27.1-16)</b></p>

## 28 KEY CATEGORY: DISTRICT MANAGEMENT



The structure of the chapters covering this key category is illustrated by Diagram 19 below.

<b>DISTRICT MANAGEMENT</b>	
<b>Chapter 28.2:</b>	Disaster Management
<b>Chapter 28.3:</b>	Bioregional Management
<b>Chapter 28.4:</b>	Spatial Planning Information System
<b>Chapter 28.5:</b>	Performance Management
<b>Chapter 28.6:</b>	Neighbourhood Area Planning and Management
<b>Chapter 28.7:</b>	Development Facilitation and Funding

Diagram 19: Chapters pertaining to the management of the ODM.

### 28.1 GENERAL BACKGROUND

As described above, South Africa is a signature to a number of international conventions and protocols that put the people of this country under specific obligations. In addition, a range of national and provincial statutes and policy frameworks has been promulgated pertaining to local government, most of which promote the key aspect of sustainable development. This SDF was prepared within the context of these conventions, protocols, legislation, and policy frameworks and, most importantly, provides a framework for their practical implementation on the municipal and local level.

This document was based upon, and gives practical effect to the bioregional planning and management approach advocated by the PGWC through policy documents such as the *Bioregional Planning Framework for the Western Cape* and the *Coastal Zone Policy for the Western Cape*. In particular, this document will facilitate bioregional planning at the most detailed ('fine grain') planning levels, namely the level of the municipality, neighbourhood area, and the farm (refer to the Par. 26.2.5 above).

In order to ensure the effective implementation of this SDF, it is imperative that the ODM, the Category B Municipalities, the relevant state departments, conservation agencies such

as SANParks and WCNCB, as well as the general public should now be empowered to interpret and implement the SDF at all spheres of government and all levels of society. What is required is the ability and commitment to govern and manage all aspects of the ODM in a manner supportive of sustainable development (i.e. *'meeting the needs of the present, without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs'*). The chapters below address some of the key aspects in this regard.

### 28.1.1 VISION FOR DISTRICT MANAGEMENT

#### VISION

**The ODM is to be managed in a manner supportive of sustainable development, namely promoting environmental integrity, economic efficiency, and human well-being in a balanced manner.**

### 28.1.2 STRATEGIES FOR EFFECTIVE DISTRICT MANAGEMENT

Table 66 below summarises the strategies for effective district management in the ODM.

**Table 66: Strategies for effective district management.**

KEY ISSUE: INSTITUTIONAL FRAMEWORK			
SPECIFIC OBJECTIVE:		Establish effective collaboration and co-operation between the relevant institutions.	
STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
28.1-01	Build the capacity to undertake bioregional planning and management.	<p>Establish appropriate bioregional management structures in accordance with the guidelines stipulated in par 28.3 below.</p> <p>Establish a competent and efficient planning department at each municipality. <b>(Refer to Project 1, Overberg IDP)</b></p> <p>Undertake appropriate training and education at all levels of planning in respect of the bioregional planning methodology.</p> <p>Establish a regional databank where all information regarding the ODM can be provided in an easy, accessible and affordable manner. <b>(Refer to Project 2, Overberg IDP)</b></p>	<p>To be undertaken by both the ODM and local Municipalities.</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p>
28.1-02	Improve inter-departmental co-operation and collaboration.	<p>Establish and sustain inter-departmental communication forums. <b>(Refer to Strategy M, Overberg IDP)</b></p>	To be facilitated by all government departments and governing institutions that are involved in the ODM

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
28.1-02	Improve inter-departmental co-operation and collaboration.	Establish and sustain inter-municipal communication forums in respect of the 'areas of co-operation'.	.To be facilitated by the ODM.
28.1-03	Improve inter-provincial co-operation and collaboration.	Establish and sustain inter-provincial communication forums in respect of the identified 'areas of co-operation' <b>(refer to Plan 1.1 and Plan 1.2)</b> <b>(Refer to Strategy M, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be facilitated by the provincial governments.
28.1-04	Institute planning that integrate environmental considerations into development frameworks.	Institute bioregional planning as the basis of all development planning and management. <b>(Refer to Strategy E and E1.1, Overberg IDP)</b>	To be facilitated the ODM and local municipalities.
28.1-05	Establish appropriate co-operation between the local municipalities in the ODM.	Establish appropriate forums and protocols, co-operation procedures and systems.  Maintain effective communication and collaboration.  Establish adaptive district management in accordance with the guidelines stipulated in Chapter 28.3 below.	To be facilitated by the ODM.  “  “

#### KEY ISSUE: DISTRICT MANAGEMENT

**OBJECTIVE:** Manage the district in accordance with a place-specific and community-based management approach that is supportive and supplementary to the existing municipal governance process.

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
28.1-06	Institute bioregional management.	Implement bioregional management procedures (refer to the principles put forward in Chapter 28.3 below).	To be undertaken by both the ODM and the local municipalities.
28.1-07	Establish bioregional management structures.	Establish neighbourhood areas as bioregional management units supportive of the municipal ward system (refer to 28.6 below).	To be undertaken by both the ODM and the local municipalities.
28.1-08	Measure and improve performance.	Draft and implement a Performance Management Framework in accordance with the principles set out in Chapter 28.5.	To be undertaken by both the ODM and the local municipalities.

<b>KEY ISSUE: DEVELOPMENT FACILITATION AND FUNDING</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Establish mechanisms and procedures to enable the Overberg District Municipality to fulfil its constitutional obligations pertaining to socio-economic development throughout its area of jurisdiction.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
28.1-09	Prepare an integrated economic development plan for the ODM.	Appoint a competent development economist to prepare an appropriate economic plan, or economic strategy (To be updated every second year).	To be facilitated by the ODM.
28.1-10	Prepare a comprehensive demography plan for the ODM as a basis for effective socio-economic development.	Appoint a competent development economist to undertake a comprehensive study of the current demography of the ODM and prepare an appropriate plan.  This study needs to be updated every second year.	To be facilitated by the ODM.
28.1-11	Establish an appropriate <b>development agency</b> for the ODM.	Appoint a competent development economist to prepare an appropriate economic plan (economic strategy).  (Refer to Chapter 28.7 below).	To be facilitated by the ODM.

### 28.1.3 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 67 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to the establishment of an effective institutional framework. These comments and recommendations are in support of and build on the strategies proposed above.

**Table 67: Institutional Framework: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

<b>REPORT 1: OVERBERG IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (ODM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: PROVIDING AND MANAGING AN INSTITUTIONAL FRAMEWORK</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
1.1	Co-operation and alignment between national, provincial and local authorities, corporate role players and non-governmental organisations in order to ensure maximum service delivery and effective resource utilisation within regional context. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-02 to 28.1-05)</b>
1.2	Municipal councillors and officials should be more positive and supportive to the needs of local communities and should improve the communication between the local authorities and the community. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-02 to 28.1-05)</b>
1.3	The constant promotion of the establishment of public/private partnerships between the district municipality, non-governmental organisations and community members. The community should be involved in a manner that can simultaneously empower them. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-02 to 28.1-05)</b>

No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.4	Broadening and/or expansion of the financial and human resource capacity of ODM in order to be able it to fully address its obligations in respect of service delivery. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-01 and 28.1-09 to 28.1-11)</b>
1.5	Effective and economic application of sparse resources such as manpower and financial sources. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-01 and 28.1-09 to 28.1-11)</b>
1.6	The establishment of the ODM as a vehicle for development in the fields of basic service delivery, human development and economic development. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-11)</b>
1.7	There is no specialist knowledge with regard to development that can pay attention to overarching integrated development management, economic development and communication. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-11)</b>
1.8	Involvement of, <i>inter alia</i> , the Departments of Health, Social Services, Labour, Education, SAPS and Transport and their representatives. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-02)</b>
1.9	Decentralisation of departmental services on regional and local levels as far as possible. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-02 to 28.1-05)</b>

<b>REPORT 2: OVERSTRAND IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Overstrand Municipality, 2003/2004)	
<b>ISSUE: COMMUNICATION</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.1	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To promote mutual understanding between Overstrand Municipality and its target groups through a deliberate planned and sustainable communication programme.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To compile an annual communication plan.</li> <li>2) To monitor public participation and feedback continuously and make the necessary adjustments not only in Council's communication plan, but also in its systems and procedures.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-02 to 28.1-05)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT</b>	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
2.2	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To build capacity and establish institutional arrangements needed to develop, implement and sustain a Performance Management System for the Overstrand Municipality.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To ensure ongoing development of the Performance Management System.</li> <li>2) To implement the approved Performance Management Framework.</li> <li>3) To continuously provide training and support to role-players.</li> <li>4) To continuously monitor Performance Management System &amp; review achievements / address shortcomings.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-08)</b></p>

<b>ISSUE: INSTITUTIONAL DESIGN</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.3	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To design and implement an appropriate municipal administration to render efficient services to the communities in the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Finalize placement and transfer of employees into new institution.</li> <li>2) Evaluation of all posts in the organizational structure of the new Overstrand Municipality by using the TASK job evaluation system in terms of the programme of the evaluation manager.</li> <li>3) Continuously communicate with Unions regarding design of micro organization structure and placement of employees into posts.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-01)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: FINANCIAL ADMINISTRATION</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.4	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: To deliver effective and efficient financial administration and management to all our clients.</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-09 to 28.1-11)</b></p>

<b>REPORT 3: CAPE AGULHAS IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (CAM, 2002)</b>	
<b>ISSUE: PROVIDING AND MANAGING AN INSTITUTIONAL FRAMEWORK</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
3.1	<p>The Cape Agulhas IDP identified the following projects regarding tourism and marketing in general:</p> <p>E3) Integration of the bioregional planning policy</p> <p>E3.1) Integrate the IDP with the SDF</p> <p>M6.2) Effective communication between Council, officials and the public</p> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.1-01, 28.1-06 and 28.1-07)</b></p>

## 28.2 DISASTER MANAGEMENT

The ODM is subject to periodic disasters caused by *inter alia* drought, flooding, disease and, in particular, wildfires, which periodically occur in the Fynbos areas and plantations of the ODM.

### 28.2.1 DISASTER MANAGEMENT PLANS

The management of disasters in general is regulated by the Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002). The purpose of this Act is to provide an integrated and co-ordinated disaster management policy that focuses on preventing or reducing the risk of disasters, mitigating the severity of disasters, emergency preparedness, rapid and effective response to disaster and post-disaster recovery.

The Act makes provision for the drafting of a disaster management framework for the district municipality after consultation with the local municipalities. The disaster management framework of the municipality must set out –

- a) The way in which the concept and principles of disaster management are to be applied in its functional area,
- b) Its role and responsibilities in terms of the national, provincial or municipal disaster management frameworks,
- c) Its role and responsibilities regarding emergency response and post-disaster recovery and rehabilitation
- d) Its capacity to fulfil its role and responsibilities,
- e) Particulars of its disaster management strategies, and
- f) Contingency strategies and emergency procedures in the event of a disaster, including measures to finance these strategies.

In terms of the Act the district municipality must, within the applicable municipal disaster management framework and after consultation with the local municipalities, prepare a disaster management plan for its area. A disaster management plan for a municipal area must –

- a) Form an integral part of the municipality's integrated development plan.
- b) Anticipate the types of disaster that are likely to occur in the municipal area and their possible effects.
- c) Place emphasis on measures that reduce the vulnerability of disaster-prone areas, communities and households.
- d) Seek to develop a system of incentives that will promote disaster management in the municipality.
- e) Identify the areas, communities or households at risk.
- f) Take into account indigenous knowledge relating to disaster management.
- g) Promote disaster management research.
- h) Identify and address weaknesses in capacity to deal with possible disasters.
- i) Provide for appropriate prevention and mitigation strategies.
- j) Facilitate maximum emergency preparedness.
- k) Contain contingency plans and emergency procedures in the event of a disaster, providing for-
  - (i) the allocation of responsibilities to the various role-players and co-ordination in the carrying of out of those responsibilities,
  - (ii) prompt disaster response and relief,
  - (iii) the procurement of essential goods and services,



- (iv) the establishment of strategic communication links,
- (v) the dissemination of information, and
- (vi) matters that may be prescribed.

It also provides for the establishment of a disaster management centre for its municipal area by the district municipality. The municipal disaster management centre, to the extent that it has capacity, must give guidance regarding, *inter alia*, the assessment and prevention or reduction the risk of disasters, through the following:

- a) Proposing ways and means of -
  - (i) determining levels of risk;
  - (ii) assessing the vulnerability of communities and households to disasters that may occur;
  - (iii) increasing the capacity of communities and households to minimise the risk and impact of disasters that may occur; and
  - (iv) monitoring the likelihood of, and the state of alertness to, disasters that may occur,
- b) The development and implementation of appropriate prevention and mitigation methodologies,
- c) The integration of prevention and mitigation methodologies with development plans, programmes and initiatives, and
- d) The management of high-risk developments.

### **28.2.2 VELD FIRE PREVENTION AND MANAGEMENT**

Fire plays an important role in the maintenance of the structure and species diversity of fynbos. Due to its role in respect of the ecology of fynbos, fire also has a dynamic impact on the dynamics of water catchment areas. Streamflow and water quality can be modified through burning. The basic premise of catchment management is that the maintenance of a healthy, natural plant cover is the most cost effective way of protecting catchment areas, ensuring high water quality and sustainable streamflow.

However, uncontrolled fire also represents a major disaster potential, especially on farms close to fynbos-clad mountains. Appropriate fire management within such natural areas is therefore of fundamental importance as it could have significant financial implications.

The management of veld fires is regulated by the National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998). The purpose of this Act is to prevent and combat veld, forest and mountain fires throughout the Republic and provide for a variety of institutions, methods and practices for achieving the purpose. The Act makes provision for the establishment of fire protection associations, 'which may be formed in respect of an area which has:

- a) *Regular veldfires; or*
- b) *A relatively uniform risk of veldfire; or*
- c) *Relatively uniform climatic conditions, or*
- d) *Relatively uniform types of forest or vegetation.'*

In terms of the Act, a fire protection association must at least:

- a) Develop and apply a veldfire management strategy for its area.
- b) Provide in the strategy for agreed mechanisms for the co-ordination of actions with adjoining fire protection associations in the event of a fire crossing boundaries.
- c) Make rules, which bind its members.
- d) Identify the ecological conditions that affect the fire danger.
- e) Regularly communicate the fire danger rating to its members.

- f) Organise and train its members in fire fighting, management and prevention.
- g) Inform its members of equipment and technology available for preventing and fighting veldfires.
- h) Provide management services, training and support for communities in their efforts to manage and control veldfires.
- i) Supply the Minister at least once every 12 months with statistics about veldfires in its area.
- j) Furnish any information requested by the Minister in order to prepare or maintain the fire danger rating system.
- k) Exercise the powers and perform the duties delegated to it by the Minister.
- l) Appoint a fire protection office, unless a municipality is a member.

Act 101 places a duty on owners to prepare and maintain firebreaks. The Act states that *'every owner on whose land a veldfire may start or burn or from whose land it may spread must prepare and maintain a firebreak on his or her side of the boundary between his or her land and any adjoining land'*.

In terms of the Act landowners must also ensure that the firebreaks are:

- a) Wide enough and long enough to have a reasonable chance of preventing a veldfire from spreading to or from neighbouring land.
- b) Reasonable free of inflammable material capable of carrying a veldfire across it.
- c) Constructed and maintained in a manner that will minimize erosion.

The Act prescribes procedures pertaining to the maintenance of firebreaks and the role of adjoining owners and the fire protection association. In addition, the Act places an obligation on all owners to acquire equipment and have access to personnel for fire fighting. According to Section 17(1) of Act 101 *'every owner on whose land a veldfire may start or burn or from whose land it may spread must:*

- a) *Have such equipment, protective clothing and trained personnel for extinguishing fires as are*
  - (i) *Prescribed; or*
  - (ii) *In the absence of prescribed requirements, reasonably required in the circumstances;*
- b) *Ensure that in his or her absence responsible persons are present on or near his or her land who, in the event of fire, will:*
  - (i) *Extinguish the fire or assist in doing so; and*
  - (ii) *Take all reasonable steps to alert the owners of adjoining land and the relevant fire protection association, if any.*

The management of potential disaster situations such as wildfires is the function of the Overberg District Municipality. It is however imperative that the local municipalities, together with Organised Agriculture and landowners contribute towards the prevention and/or management of wildfires through the implementation of the above stipulations of Act 101.

### 28.2.3 STRATEGIES FOR DISASTER MANAGEMENT

Table 68 below summarises the recommended strategies for disaster management in the ODM.

**Table 68: Strategies for disaster management.**

<b>KEY ISSUE: INVOLVE ALL ROLE-PLAYERS</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Build additional capacity and responsibility through the involvement of the broad public and role players.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
28.2-01	Establish an institution for the co-ordination of disaster management.	<p>Disaster Management must be addressed and managed at district level.</p> <p>Establish a Representative Forum and database to identify available resources and role-players.</p> <p>Adopt a policy of resource sharing between the various municipalities.</p> <p>Establish Fire Associations that could be generated and executed by the general public.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the local municipalities.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with DWAF, private institutions and the general public.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with local municipalities.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the fire brigade.</p>
28.2-02	Involve all levels of society in the prevention, management and mitigation of disasters.	<p>Mobilise the media (radio and local newspapers) to play an active role in the awareness campaigns.</p> <p>Undertake a quarterly Disaster Day to mobilise awareness in the region.</p>	<p>KFM to play an integral part in the communication to both institutions and the general public.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the RTOs.</p>
28.2-03	Institute disaster management education at all levels of society.	<p>Institute awareness and education programmes to build awareness and transfer traditional knowledge under the general public.</p> <p>Develop and institute integrated firefighting programmes for volunteers to increase manpower.</p> <p>Adopt a Neighbourhood planning strategy to involve all levels of society in the management of disasters.</p> <p>Institute compulsory disaster management education programmes for information officers working at local tourist bureau's and policemen.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the various ward committees.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the WCNCB, SANParks, DWAF and the general public .</p> <p>To be facilitated by the representative Forum in collaboration with the ODM.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the WCNCB, SANParks, the ODM, RTOs and Police departments.</p>
28.2-04	Ensure effective communication between affected parties.	Establish a communication framework from neighbourhood level up to national level.	To be facilitated by the ODM, general public and applicable National Departments.

<b>KEY ISSUE: DISASTER AUDIT</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Compile appropriate studies in order to identify all risks and hazards associated with disasters and to reduce risk and vulnerability.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
28.2-05	Undertake appropriate studies to determine areas of concern.	<p>Compile a Risk &amp; Vulnerability Analysis throughout the ODM.</p> <p>Institute research related to past occurrences of disasters.</p> <p>Compile a Cause and Effect analysis to determine the potential for disasters to occur more than once.</p> <p>Undertake a capacity assessment in the local municipalities.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with the local municipalities and weather bureau's.</p> <p>To be facilitated by ODM.</p> <p>To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with the local municipalities and weather bureau's.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the local municipalities in collaboration with the ODM.</p>
28.2-06	Develop / upgrade efficient GIS Data.	Undertake research in terms of the available information and required information.	To be undertaken by ODM.

<b>KEY ISSUE: FUNDING</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Ensure adequate resources to effectively manage and mitigate disasters.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
28.2-07	Obtain adequate resources for disaster management.	<p>Establish partnerships between government and the private sector for funding.</p> <p>Institute programmes for encouraging the private sector to collectively fund essential disaster management projects.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by ODM.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the private sector.</p>
28.2-08	Develop an effective institution to manage funds.	<p>Establish a Trust Fund to relocate funds at the time of disasters.</p> <p>Ensure efficient use of existing financial resources.</p> <p>Investigate alternative sources of funding such as from DAWF (Working for Water).</p> <p>Develop contingency plans and follow-up programmes.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by ODM</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p> <p>“</p>

<b>KEY ISSUE: MAINTENANCE OF INFRASTRUCTURE</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Develop / upgrade essential infrastructure and facilities to improve response and accessibility to disasters.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS AND ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
28.2-09	Ensure preservation of existing roads and infrastructure.	Develop a Road Maintenance Plan (refer to Urban Development).  Utilise and develop existing facilities.	To be undertaken by ODM in collaboration with the local municipalities.  To be undertaken by ODM.
28.2-10	Improve response time through effective infrastructure co-ordination.	Ensure effective infrastructure planning and co-ordination in order to improve response times.  Preserve existing infrastructure before expanding.  Ensure effective co-ordination between government departments and municipalities.  Extend fire fighting equipment to rural areas and farms.	To be undertaken by ODM in collaboration with the local municipalities.  “  “  To be undertaken by the ODM in collaboration with local municipalities.

<b>KEY ISSUE: PREVENTION AND MITIGATION</b>			
<b>OBJECTIVE:</b>		Prevent and mitigate the effects of possible disasters through effective development imperatives.	
<b>STRATEGY</b>		<b>PROGRAMMES &amp; PROJECTS</b>	<b>INSTITUTIONS &amp; ACTIONS</b>
<b>NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>		
28.2-11	Institute measures to prevent / reduce the risk of disasters.	Draft a Disaster Management Framework.  Draft and implement a disaster management plan for the district & local municipal areas of jurisdiction.  Establish a disaster management centre from which emergency services could be send out.  Reduce the risk of disasters through analysis of economic, environmental, social and infrastructure trends.  Apply certain standardised Land Use Planning Principles in respect of risk prevention, i.e. flood lines.  Apply the principles of sustainable development (refer to Chapter 18.3) in order to minimise the risk of disasters.	To be undertaken by ODM.  To be undertaken by the ODM and the local municipalities.  “  “  “  “

STRATEGY		PROGRAMMES & PROJECTS	INSTITUTIONS & ACTIONS
NO.	DESCRIPTION		
28.2-11	Institute measures to prevent / reduce the risk of disasters.	<p>Formulate a disaster management action strategy.</p> <p>Identify 'No Go Areas' in developing areas.</p> <p>Implement controlled fires and organised burning programmes to prevent runaway veldfires.</p> <p>Preserve conservation-worthy land.</p> <p>Extend fire brigade services in the various settlements.</p>	<p>To be undertaken by ODM.</p> <p>To be undertaken by ODM.</p> <p>To be facilitated by ODM in collaboration with the Department of Agriculture.</p> <p>To be facilitated by the ODM in collaboration with the various fire brigades.</p>
28.2-12	Ensure effective disaster management training of personnel throughout the district.	<p>Establish training facilities throughout the district.</p> <p>Make full use of existing training.</p>	<p>To be facilitated by ODM.</p> <p>“</p>

#### 28.2.4 INVENTORY: INPUTS FROM IDPs AND STUDY REPORTS

Table 69 below summarises the comments and recommendations pertaining to disaster management and the municipal area's disaster fighting capabilities.

**Table 69: Disaster Management: Summary of the comments and recommendations.**

REPORT 1: THEEWATERSKLOOF IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS (Theewaterskloof Municipality, 2002)	
ISSUE: DISASTER MANAGEMENT	
No.	Comments and Recommendations
1.1	Prepare a disaster management plan for the district and for the local municipal areas. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.2-11)</b>
1.2	Fire safety and fire fighting facilities is a priority, which include fire fighting training programme. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.2-01)</b>
1.3	Prepare an emergency plan for all role-players. <b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.2-11 and 28.2-12)</b>

<b>REPORT 2: OVERSTRAND IDP: COMMENTS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b> (Overstrand Municipality, 2003/2004)	
<b>ISSUE: FIRE FIGHTING</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.1	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: The provision of an adequate fire protection service to the residents of the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To replace and upgrade current vehicles.</li> <li>2) To upgrade and acquire additional equipment.</li> <li>3) To improve personal safety for fire fighters.</li> <li>4) To improve public knowledge of fire prevention.</li> <li>5) To upgrade buildings to improve storage and training facilities.</li> <li>6) Conclude fire agreement with District Municipality.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.2-09 and 28.2-10)</b></p>
<b>ISSUE: DISASTER MANAGEMENT</b>	
<b>No.</b>	<b>Comments and Recommendations</b>
2.2	<p>The Overstrand IDP identified the Objective – Key Performance Area, Level 1: The provision of an adequate disaster management service to the residents of the Overstrand.</p> <p>The following Key Performance Areas, Level 2, have thus been identified:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) To collate all available emergency and contingency plans from the four administrations and integrate them into one single updated local plan as required by the Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002).</li> <li>2) To integrate the above local plan with that of the Overberg District Municipality as required by the Disaster Management Act, 20002 (Act 57 of 2002).</li> <li>3) Continual updating of integrated plan.</li> <li>4) Provision of disaster relief.</li> </ol> <p><b>(Refer to SDF Strategies 28.2-11 and 28.2-12)</b></p>

## 28.3 BIOREGIONAL MANAGEMENT

From the perspective of promoting sustainable development and biodiversity conservation through integrating development and conservation, it is especially important to consider regional planning and management in the context of the integrative relationship between ecological processes and the needs and perceptions of local communities. This integrative relationship is referred to as **bioregional management** in the *Global Biodiversity Strategy* (WRI, 1992).

As stated above, bioregional management requires **delimiting bioregions** and managing them in an integrated, holistic manner. Within the ecological and social framework provided by a bioregion, government, community, corporate and other private interests, share responsibility for co-ordinating land-use planning, for both public and private land and for defining and implementing development options that would ensure that human needs are met in a sustainable way (WRI, 1992).

To successfully implement bioregional management, the following challenges need to be addressed (Miller, 1996):

- a) Create the capacity to manage complex and integrated programmes.
- b) Involve stakeholders in a meaningful manner.
- c) Develop and link established institutions, or if needed, create new ones.

The following guidelines are provided for the practical implementation of bioregional management in the ODM (refer to the table below).

**Table 70: Guidelines for bioregional planning and management** (From: Manual for Bioregional Planning in the Western Cape {PGWC, 2003}).

<b>BIOREGIONAL PLANNING GUIDELINES</b>	
<b>GUIDELINE NO. 1: BUILDING CAPACITY</b>	
<b>a) Develop leadership for the bioregional programme.</b>	Ideally a well-respected local individual or organisation who has leadership capabilities and who knows the community and its resources, should take responsibility for this task.
<b>b) View management as a social and governance issue.</b>	The manner in which authority and responsibility is distributed amongst spheres of government and between public and private interests, is a central issue in promoting co-operation and mobilising skills and capacities.
<b>c) Use authority to foster co-operation.</b>	It is idealistic to expect constituents to work together as a 'tight band of well-meaning stakeholders'. Experience has shown that a measure of authority to provide the backbone to efforts is both needed and appreciated. An authority must ensure that minimum goals, standards and criteria are met.



<p><b>d) Redistribute power over land and resources to develop authority and responsibility in the bioregion.</b></p> <p>The challenge here is to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Establish incentives for local residents to take on responsibility for biodiversity protection and management.</li> <li>(ii) Foster a fair sharing of benefits from the use of resources.</li> <li>(iii) Place the authority to protect, control and use, closer to the ground (community level).</li> </ul>
<p><b>e) Identify and assess the capacities of organisations and individuals in the bioregion and fill the gaps.</b></p> <p>This action requires a detailed and systematic evaluation of skills and capacities in the bioregion, and the filling of gaps can often be achieved by establishing a new structure through which existing skills can be co-ordinated and where shortcomings can be supplemented by employing new skills.</p>
<p><b>f) Use and build upon existing capacity wherever possible.</b></p> <p>The establishment of large regional structures should be avoided and priority should be given to reinforcing local technical capacity through networking on a larger scale.</p>
<p><b>g) Build the capacity to deal with challenge.</b></p> <p>Bioregional planning takes place in the context of dynamic change and flux and it is, therefore, important to promote and foster capacity to anticipate and manage challenge.</p>
<p><b>GUIDELINE NO. 2: CHALLENGE TO FOSTER STAKEHOLDER PARTICIPATION</b></p>
<p><b>a) Leaders, planners and policy makers should get to know the stakeholders and their concerns, interests and perspectives.</b></p> <p>If too little is done to get to know and understand the region's people, bioregional planning and management will fail.</p>
<p><b>b) Initially, focus on a few issues of interest to the widest possible set of stakeholders.</b></p> <p>Experience suggests that it is of decisive importance to begin simply by limiting the programme to one, or a few issues of common concern. Programmes should rather grow gradually to embrace more comprehensive issues.</p>
<p><b>c) Link conservation and restoration activities with socio-economic development goals in the bioregion.</b></p> <p>The challenge is to integrate development with conservation goals and measures.</p>
<p><b>d) Provide access to decision-making.</b></p> <p>Give local residents and communities access to decision-making processes and the skills needed to participate fully in the development and implementation of democratically managed bioregional programmes.</p>
<p><b>e) To keep stakeholder participation fair, give all participants information of equal value.</b></p> <p>Constituents need to be well and equally informed and a scientifically sound information base must be established at an early stage.</p>

<p><b>f) Give stakeholders incentives to get involved in and committed to bioregional programmes.</b></p> <p>Whilst it is recognised that in some areas interest in conservation is great and that volunteerism may be assured, few stakeholders can do more than attend a number of public meetings or respond to questionnaires. To alter farming practices and other resource practices in the interest of conservation, will require compensation for time, expenses and alternative uses.</p>
<p><b>g) To foster involvement and commitment, ensure that individuals and group stakeholders receive a fair share of the benefits.</b></p> <p>Where conservation-linked programmes are linked to reward, ensure that it is both fair and forthcoming.</p>
<p><b>h) In areas of multiple jurisdictions, develop co-ordination mechanisms that do not challenge existing sovereignty.</b></p> <p>The biosphere reserve approach, for example, leaves intact the authority of public agencies and private property rights.</p>
<p><b>i) Honour all commitments that result from negotiations.</b></p> <p>It is especially important that government ensures that commitments are honoured and that such commitments do not fall prey to changing budgets, personnel departures which leave unfilled vacancies, etc.</p>
<p><b>j) Promptly implement projects that respond to community needs.</b></p> <p>Where the implementation of a bioregional management programme gives rise to specific projects, it is of decisive importance that such projects be implemented speedily.</p>
<p><b>GUIDELINE NO. 3: CHALLENGE TO ESTABLISH CO-OPERATIVE ARRANGEMENTS AMONG INSTITUTIONS</b></p>
<p><b>a) Establish co-operative management options with and among stakeholders.</b></p> <p>A cardinal rule of ecosystem management is that people with interest in a bioregion are not simply to be placated with marginal give-away or menial jobs, but are understood to be partners.</p>
<p><b>b) Adjust the design and delivery of technology to allow for the space and time necessary for communities and institutions to adapt.</b></p> <p>Innovation and technology have to be introduced carefully and adjusted to local and social institutional circumstances.</p>
<p><b>c) Do not hesitate to rely on short-term financial support from external sources for bioregional programmes initially, as long as it is replaced in a timely manner by a sustainable flow of resources.</b></p> <p>Consideration should be given to the setting up of an environmental fund for the bioregion in which grants and contributions from international, national, provincial, local and private resources can be held in trust and capitalised.</p>
<p><b>d) Stimulate and promote programmes of high quality, inter-disciplinary research into determinants of the occurrence of ecosystems and natural resources and the uses made of them by rural and/or regional communities.</b></p> <p>Provide a supportive environment for creative and innovative research or applications development in sustainable conservation, resource use and management on bioregional bases. Attract postgraduate research to this field.</p>

Within a bioregion, uncertainty (or lack of knowledge) about the status and function of ecosystems can be addressed in an adaptive management strategy - an approach that relies on continual assessment and adjustment. Adaptive management methods at the municipal level, can contribute enormously to achieving these objectives.

Adaptive management incorporates long-term monitoring as a mechanism to assess the success, or failure, of existing management policies in the bioregional context, and as a guide to making adjustments. Continued research is necessary to increase insights into ecological processes and management strategies.

Repeated revision of management decisions is at the core of adaptive management approaches, but this does not necessarily threaten resource security; rather it provides for sustainability of resource use. Threats to resource security can be minimised if management objectives are set clearly. In addition, adaptive management will reduce the sort of pressure that stymies action because initial choices are not viewed as final choices.

The concept of **continual improvement** is embodied in bioregional management. Continual improvement is defined as the process of enhancing management actions to achieve improvements in overall performance (i.e. remaining dynamic). It is achieved by continually evaluating environmental performance against a set environmental policies, objectives and targets with the purpose of identifying opportunities for improvement.

## 28.4 ESTABLISHMENT AND MANAGEMENT OF SPATIAL PLANNING INFORMATION SYSTEM

This chapter provides guidelines for the development of a **Spatial Planning Information System (SPIS)** for the ODM. The purpose of the SPIS will be to facilitate effective land-use planning throughout the province through the implementation of the SPCs and Sub-Categories in digital format.

The proposed SPIS will consist of a **Geographical Information System (GIS)** that is to be implemented at both the ODM and the Category B Municipalities. This GIS is to provide essential and up-to-date information to end-users. The GIS is to be managed by specialised GIS managers and system developers.

Internet / Intranet technology will be used to integrate the GIS with a database that provides general users with spatial information and tools that could be used without the need of expert GIS knowledge.

### 28.4.1 APPLICATION OF SPATIAL PLANNING CATEGORIES

#### 28.4.1.1 STANDARDISATION

To ensure effective functioning of the SPIS, it is crucial to adhere to standards set for the system. To enable the sharing of data and information between municipalities, standardisation needs to take place in terms of the following:

- a) System structure and development.
- b) Data structure and development (including metadata and data dictionaries, quality of data and control points).
- c) Data format and naming conventions.
- d) Colour codes for SPCs and subcategories.
- e) Regulations integrated with the information system.
- f) Procedure for capturing, retrieving, displaying and reproducing data.
- g) General management and operating procedures of the system.

#### a) Colour-Coding

SPCs and Sub-Categories should be colour-coded and numbered throughout the entire system in a standardised manner. Table 71 below illustrates the proposed SPC colours.

**Table 71: Colour-coding of SPCs** (From: Manual for Bioregional Planning in the Western Cape {PGWC, 2003}).

SPC	DESCRIPTION	COLOUR CODE
<b>A</b>	<b>Core Area</b>	<b>Dark green</b>
<b>B</b>	<b>Buffer Area</b>	<b>Light green</b>
<b>C</b>	<b>Transition Area</b>	<b>Yellow</b>
<b>D</b>	<b>Urban-Related Area</b>	<b>Grey</b>
<b>E</b>	<b>Industrial Area</b>	<b>Purple</b>
<b>F</b>	<b>Surface Infrastructure</b>	<b>Black &amp; white</b>

## b) Numbering

The numbering of individual entities is to be undertaken in accordance with the following procedure:

- (i) A number indicating the District Municipality (numbers have been allocated in alphabetical order) (refer to Table 72 below).
- (ii) A number indicating the Local Municipality, or bioregion (refer to Table 73 below).
- (iii) A capital letter indicating the SPC.
- (iv) A lower case letter indicating the Sub-category.
- (v) A number identifying the specific place or feature.

**Table 72: District Municipality numbers for recording of SPCs** (From: Manual for Bioregional Planning in the Western Cape {PGWC, 2003}).

DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	BIOREGIONAL PLANNING NUMBER
Boland	01
Central Karoo	02
Eden	03
Overberg	04
West Coast	05

**Table 73: Local Municipality numbers for recording of SPCs.**

LOCAL MUNICIPALITY	BIOREGIONAL PLANNING NUMBER
Theewaterskloof (WC031)	01
Overstrand (WC032)	02
Cape Agulhas (WC033)	03
Swellendam (WC034)	04
ODM District Management Area	05

In accordance with the above procedure an agricultural industry (E.a) within the Cape Agulhas Municipality (03) would, for example, be numbered as **03-E.a (+ the dedicated place or feature number)**. Such a numbering system will promote effective integrated record-keeping at all levels of planning, from the local to the provincial level.

## 28.5 MEASURING AND IMPROVING PERFORMANCE

In order to achieve the primary objective of bioregional planning as advocated by PGWC, namely to promote sustainable development, it is imperative that mechanisms be instituted to measure and improve performance in this regard and to serve as a basis for adaptive management of the municipality and/or component bioregions.

The performance management programmes of municipalities should strongly focus on their sustainable development achievements in terms of *inter alia* the Local Agenda 21 (refer to Par. 12.1.3 above).

### 28.5.1 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT INDICATORS

In order to supplement the performance management of the ODM it is suggested that the *Environmental Indicators for National State of the Environment Reporting* published by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (DEAT) during 2002 be adopted by the municipalities.

These indicators address eight distinct themes, namely:

- a) Atmosphere and climate.
- b) Waste management.
- c) Human well-being.
- d) Environmental management.
- e) Inland water systems.
- f) Marine, coastal and estuarine environments.
- g) Biodiversity and natural heritage.
- h) Land-use.

**Table 74: Summary of the indicators proposed by DEAT** (From: Manual for Bioregional Planning in the Western Cape {PGWC, 2003}).

<b>ATMOSPHERE &amp; CLIMATE</b>	
Climate Change	AC01 – Greenhouse gas emissions (carbon dioxide, nitrous oxide & methane) AC02 – Energy use (fossil vs non-fossil fuels) AC03 – Size of the national carbon sink AC04 – Malaria: morbidity and mortality AC05 – Mean annual temperature AC06 – Cost of carbon abatement AC07 – Cost of natural disaster relief AC08 – Energy intensity
Stratospheric Ozone	AC09 – Consumption of ozone depleting substances AC10 – UV-B trends AC11 – Stratospheric ozone level
Air Generation	AC12 – Ambient sulphur dioxide concentration AC13 – Ambient nitrogen dioxide concentration
<b>WASTE MANAGEMENT</b>	
Waste Generation	WM01 – General waste produced per income group per year WM02 – General waste produced per capita per year WM03 – Hazardous waste produced per sector per year

Waste Reduction	<p>WM04 – Waste recycling  WM05 – Value of waste recycled  WM06 – General waste correctly disposed through landfill  WM07 – Hazardous waste correctly disposed  WM08 – Available landfill lifespan  WM09 – Provincial expenditure on waste management  WM10 – Provincial waste collection capacity</p>
<b>HUMAN WELL-BEING</b>	
Human Settlements	<p>HW01 – Green space per settlement  HW02 – Contaminated land per settlement  HW03 – Housing density  HW04 – Urban/rural population  HW05 – Proportion of urban area in South Africa</p>
Vulnerability	<p>HW06 – GDP/capita  HW07 – Life expectancy  HW08 – Adult literacy rate  HW09 – Employment rate  HW10 – Population growth rate  HW11 – HIV/AIDS incidence  HW12 – House energy use  HW13 – Access to water  HW14 – Access to sanitation</p>
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT</b>	
Environmental Management	<p>EM01 – Multilateral environmental agreements  EM02 – Budgetary allocation to natural resource management  EM03 – Budgetary allocation to environmental education  EM04 – Budgetary allocation to environmental research  EM05 – Inclusion of IEM into IDPs and SDIs  EM06 – Conciliation cases  EM07 – Voluntary adoption of environmental management systems  EM08 – Voluntary use of environmental accounting and reporting  EM09 – Government capacity for environmental management  EM10 – Environmental reporting by government departments</p>
<b>INLAND WATER</b>	
Water Quantity	<p>IW01 – Intensity of use of surface water resources  IW02 – Intensity of use of ground water resources  IW03 – Total surface water used per sector  IW04 – Total ground water used per sector  IW05 – Total surface water resources per capita  IW06 – People dependent on ground water resources  IW07 – Surface water affordability</p>
Water Quality	<p>IW08 – Surface water salinity  IW09 – Ground water salinity  IW10 – Surface water nutrients  IW11 – Ground water nutrients  IW12 – Surface water microbiology  IW13 – Ground water microbiology  IW14 – Surface water toxicity</p>
Freshwater Ecosystem Integrity	<p>IW15 – Riparian vegetation  IW16 – Aquatic macro-invertebrate composition  IW17 – Fish community health  IW18 – Aquatic habitat integrity</p>

<b>MARINE, COASTAL &amp; ESTUARINE</b>	
Resource Management	MC01 – Catches and Maximum Sustainable Yield per fishery sector MC02 – Distribution and abundance of resource species MC03 – Catch per unit effort per fishery sector MC04 – Commercial fishing rights supporting SMME development
Resource Quality	MC05 – Estuarine Health Index (State of South African estuaries) MC06 – Pollutant loading entering the seas from land-based sources MC07 – Blue Flag beaches MC08 – Concentration of heavy metals in sediments or biological tissues MC09 – Oil pollution accidents along the coast MC10 – Land cover change in the coastal zone MC11 – Population density change in the coastal zone
<b>BIODIVERSITY &amp; NATURAL HERITAGE</b>	
Species Diversity	BD01 – Threatened and extinct species per taxonomic group BD02 – Endemic species per taxonomic group BD03 – Alien (non-indigenous) species per taxonomic group BD04 – Population trends of selected species BD05 – Distribution and abundance of selected alien species
Habitat Change	BD06 – Extent of conserved areas BD07 – Extent of natural areas remaining BD08 – Disturbance regimes: fire frequency BD09 – Disturbance regimes: flood and drought
Resource Value	BD10 – Contribution to job creation: conservation areas BD11 – Contribution to job creation: eradication of alien species BD12 – Economic contribution of commercially utilised indigenous species BD13 – Economic contribution of commercially utilised freshwater species BD14 – Economic contribution of commercially utilised marine, coastal & estuarine species BD15 – Economic contribution of commercially utilised terrestrial species
Natural Heritage Resources	NH01 – Status of natural heritage resources NH02 – Investment into natural heritage resources NH03 – Visitors to natural heritage resources
<b>LAND USE</b>	
Land Use	LU01 – Land cover LU02 – Land productivity vs potential
Land Condition	LU03 – Desertification LU04 – Soil loss LU05 – Soil acidification LU06 – Soil salinisation LU07 – Land degradation LU08 – Persistent organic pollutants



## 28.6 NEIGHBOURHOOD AREA PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT

**As stated in Chapter 16.1.4.2 above, it is important that the Category B municipalities adopt the concept of neighbourhood area planning, which implies that the neighbourhood areas be delimited and that appropriate neighbourhood area management structures be established. The SDFs of the local municipalities are to include plans, strategies and guidelines in this regard.**

It is important that the strategies for sustainable development of all municipalities should focus on the following:

- a) Providing a mechanism for integrating environmental and poverty concerns into municipal decision-making.
- b) Providing a mechanism to encourage integration and mainstreaming.
- c) Providing a strategic and participatory process of analysis, debate, capacity strengthening, planning and action towards sustainable development.
- d) Integrating both poverty eradication and environmental sustainability perspectives with national economic planning, policies and programmes.
- e) Serving as a catalyst to analyse economic, social and environmental development trends, take stock of inter-related policies and plans, and identify key problems – with the objective to achieve economic efficiency, social justice and environmental sustainability simultaneously.
- f) Mobilization of communities to promote continuous democratic dialogue and debate amongst broad sections of society.
- g) Participation, representation, ownership and involvement of all relevant stake-holders promoting broad-based policy learning and capacity development.
- h) Giving effect to government commitment and political will through negotiation and conflict management and balancing technical analysis with participatory planning process.
- i) Transparency and awareness of choices and dilemma.
- j) Early implementation of priority initiatives consolidating local ownership and demonstrates meaningful progress.

In order to achieve the above, it is recognised that constructive community participation is imperative. It is accepted that, for community participation to be effective, innovative planning and management strategies need to be implemented by the municipalities. In this regard, key requirements that need to be addressed by the municipalities *inter alia* are to ensure that the physical scale of the component planning areas of the municipalities is such that the residents of those areas would identify with them to the extent that they would be encouraged to actively take part in the planning and management of such areas. Residents of any area should be convinced that it is worthwhile to take part in the planning of that area. Together with appropriate scale, it is also imperative that institutional structures be created within the planning areas that would ensure effective decision-making and implementation of policy.

Ideally the municipal wards should provide the basis for effective community participation. However, in many instances the wards have been demarcated in a manner that does not promote enthusiastic community participation and representation. Subsequently, it is clear that, for the purpose of co-ordinating planning and land management within the municipalities, and for inter-municipal planning, a smaller planning unit is required to meet

place-specific planning criteria. In this regard, it is recommended that provision be made for **neighbourhood planning areas** to supplement the statutory<sup>15</sup> municipal wards.

### 28.6.1 NEIGHBOURHOOD AREAS AS A SUPPLEMENT TO MUNICIPAL WARDS

As stated above, the neighbourhood areas are to supplement and/or support the municipal wards and the functioning of the Ward Councillors and Committees wards. This would be achieved through the following:

- a) The neighbourhood areas would mitigate, or compensate for, the shortcomings of the ward boundaries with regard to their compliance with social, ecological and economic delimitation criteria where inconsistencies exist (refer to Par. 28.6.2 below).
- b) Where neighbourhood area parameters do not correspond with those of the wards, effective co-operative arrangements could be established between the relevant I&APs on a neighbourhood area or precinct scale. The relevant Ward Councillors are to facilitate such collaboration and co-operation.
- c) The neighbourhood areas would facilitate community representation and participation in issues that affect them directly, subsequently supporting the Ward Councillor in ensuring democratic co-operative governance.
- d) The neighbourhood areas would provide an appropriate basis for effective public-private-community partnerships.

### 28.6.2 DELIMITATION CRITERIA

In the *Bioregional Planning Policy for the Western Cape* the following criteria are recommended for the delimitation of neighbourhood areas within a municipality (also refer to Chapter 16.1.4.2 above):

- a) Municipal ward boundaries
- b) Property boundaries
- c) Boundaries of ecosystems and habitat units
- d) Natural and human-made barriers
- e) Common character
- f) Manageable size
- g) Central places
- h) Functional areas
- i) Cohesiveness of communities

### 28.6.3 NEIGHBOURHOOD AREA PLANS

It is proposed that the local municipalities should, in co-operation with neighbourhood area advisory committees, be responsible for the preparation of more detailed development plans determining the future nature of neighbourhood areas. Such plans, referred to as spatial development plans in terms of the Western Cape Planning and Development Act, 1999 (Act 107 of 1999), should, accordingly, provide a vision and goals for the future development of the neighbourhood area, a policy framework according to which

<sup>15</sup> Moughtin (1997) states that the delimitation of *neighbourhoods, districts, etc.* is essential for achieving sustainable development. *'This process of the division of the settlements is most effective in promoting sustainable development when these divisions of the settlements are legitimised politically and when their elected councillors are given a mandate to protect and enhance the quality of the local environment'* (Moughtin, 1997). It is suggested that the latter view be considered against the background of the objectives of both the Municipal Structures Act and the Municipal Demarcation Act, particularly with regard to the role wards and ward councillors and ward committees can play in the future.

development decisions supportive of this vision should be made, as well as strategies for the attainment of this vision.

Neighbourhood area plans should, furthermore, provide development guidelines for maintaining the aesthetic quality and specific character of the neighbourhood area. In addition, neighbourhood area plans should describe how IDP goals are to be achieved. Alternatives may also be proposed, based upon the demonstration that meeting the goals of the IDP is not appropriate.

The IDP provides an overall framework, which should guide the formulation of neighbourhood area plans.

Guidelines for neighbourhood area planning, on content and technical analysis, should be provided in order to promote neighbourhood area plans of a consistent quality with sufficient information for council decision-making.

A database for each neighbourhood area should be established, and should continually be updated with information acquired during the analysis phase of various planning projects. This information source should provide a useful basis for future planning and development decisions. This database should be developed by the relevant neighbourhood area advisory committee, drawing on local knowledge of the neighbourhood area's character, conditions, needs, etc.

Furthermore, in order for neighbourhood areas to be positioned effectively within the bioregion, they require access to information on the region as a whole. It is, therefore, proposed that all available information pertaining to the region as a whole be put on to a website, from where it can easily be accessed by each neighbourhood area advisory committee.

#### **28.6.4 IMPLEMENTATION OF NEIGHBOURHOOD AREA PLANS**

It is recommended that the approval and adoption of neighbourhood area plans be the primary responsibility of elected ward representatives. Such neighbourhood area plans could then be adopted and implemented by the relevant Local Municipality.

Ward Councillors (as provided for by the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 {Act 117 of 1998}) should ensure that the interests of the various neighbourhood areas falling within their wards are communicated to the Local Municipality in order to ensure that neighbourhood area plans and proposals are implemented.

Ward Councillors could, accordingly, ensure that the proposals of their neighbourhood areas are included in the prioritisation processes of the Local Municipality for capital expenditures and other decision-making. The neighbourhood area plans could, in this way, be linked to the budgeting process of the Municipality.

In accordance with the bioregional planning approach, the establishment of rural and on-farm settlements should be guided by neighbourhood area development plans. Such plans would, *inter alia*, comprise the following three main components:

- a) Establishing a role / vision for the neighbourhood area.
- b) Identifying neighbourhood area issues and the formulation of policies.
- c) Drafting a spatial framework for the neighbourhood area.

The following issues, policies and action plans can be addressed on a neighbourhood level:

- a) Provision of essential services, i.e. water, sewage and refuse disposal infrastructure
- b) Local economic development
- c) Transportation and access
- d) Aesthetic control
- e) Community facilities
- f) Protection of natural and man-made features
- g) Rehabilitation and enhancement of environments
- h) Safety and security

### **28.6.5 SPATIAL PLANS FOR NEIGHBOURHOOD AREAS**

Spatial plans should be drawn up according to the envisaged roles of neighbourhood areas, whilst giving physical form to policy proposals. Neighbourhood area spatial plans should be guided by higher level development plans, e.g. the IDP and the SDF.

The spatial plan of the IDP indicates the spatial implications of policy proposals and strategies. It provides for the designation of SPCs to regulate development so that the goals and objectives set for the district may be achieved. These SPCs designate land-use across the entire geographic area of the district.

The SPCs that have been designated on a bioregional level should be refined and fine-tuned on a neighbourhood area level. Neighbourhood plans could also put forward alternative proposals, where it can be demonstrated that IDP proposals are inappropriate.

In the drafting and refinement of neighbourhood area plans it is important that spatial plans of adjoining neighbourhood areas be coordinated and reconciled with one another.

The following aspects need to be addressed in spatial plans for neighbourhood areas:

- a) A green system where development should not be allowed, or will be more tightly controlled for a variety of reasons, including ecological, hazards, production, recreation and place-making reasons.
- b) Location of settlement areas in accordance with development pattern characteristics of the neighbourhood area.
- c) Nature and configuration of the transportation system.
- d) Location and nature of social community facilities.
- e) Location and nature of utility and emergency services.

**Annexure 3** provides a comprehensive description of neighbourhood area planning and management.

## 28.7 DEVELOPMENT FACILITATION AND FUNDING

In terms of the Municipal Systems Act, municipalities have to be development driven / orientated. However, in practice, most municipalities are finding it difficult to perform this new function efficiently, as it has never been part of their original core functions.

In order to facilitate the development process and its funding, it is proposed that a **development agency** be established for the district as a whole (or for portions of the district) (A number of development agencies have been successfully established in South Africa, e.g. the Cape Town Partnership, Gauteng Development Agency and the Johannesburg Development Agency).

### 28.7.1 WHAT IS A DEVELOPMENT AGENCY?

A development agency can be defined as *a formal forum/institution that links economic development initiatives of local government with private sector business principles.*

A development agency can be in the form of a singular entity for the entire region, or be a conglomeration of a number of development agencies established for specific portions of the municipality. In this regard, it is important to note that there are no blueprints for effective agencies – choices have to be made locally and the type of agency selected must suite local requirements (models vary between private companies and non-profit agencies).

The development agency should function under the auspices of, or as an ‘independent’ extension, of the Municipality, and be fully accountable to the municipality (e.g. the LED unit).

It could incorporate various forms or types of development vehicles, including:

- a) Public-private partnerships
- b) Joint ventures
- c) Cooperatives
- d) Section 21 companies
- e) Local development forums

### 28.7.2 RATIONALE AND NEED FOR A DEVELOPMENT AGENCY

The rationale behind the development agency is that *‘One cannot solve 21<sup>st</sup> century problems with 19<sup>th</sup> century solutions.’*

This rationale flows *inter alia* from the following:

- a) Increasing urbanisation, unemployment, and poverty in municipal areas, as well as urgent need for housing, infrastructure, services, etc.
- b) The obligations of municipalities in terms of the Municipal Systems Act (refer specifically to their development functions). Development facilitation and funding is a new function of municipalities, which do not necessarily have the capacity to undertake this function.
- c) The general lack of funding and capacity to deliver the required development.
- d) An urgent need for a partnership structure as a delivery vehicle.

The need for an appropriate development agency is highlighted by the following:

- (i) Stimulus and facilitation of employment creation and economic growth.

- (ii) Co-ordination and implementation of IDP projects, including prioritisation, funding and facilitation.
- (iii) Globalisation and promotion of international competitiveness.
- (iv) Creation of enabling environments for private sector growths, and public-private partnerships.
- (v) Procurement and appropriate allocation of development funding.
- (vi) Appropriate management of latent linkages.
- (vii) Providing support / expertise / guidance / funding to local business, especially SMMEs.

### **28.2.3 DEVELOPMENT AGENCY FUNDING**

Development agencies can access the following sources for the necessary funding:

#### **a) Business funding**

This source can include the following:

- (i) Shareholder funding.
- (ii) Success fees.
- (iii) Strategic partners funding.
- (iv) Programme ring-fencing.

#### **b) Donor funding / grants**

This source can include the following:

- (i) International donors.
- (ii) Government grants.

#### **c) Industrial Development Council programmes and grants**

The Industrial Development Council (IDC) can be approached for the following:

- (i) Pre-establishment agency set-up funds (R800 000).
- (ii) Establishment grant (R2.5 million).
- (iii) Operation activities (R5 million).
- (iv) Development and management support.

### **28.2.4 ESTABLISHMENT OF A DEVELOPMENT AGENCY**

The establishment of a development agency includes the following steps or actions:

- a) Define vision, goals and objectives.
- b) Gain political mandate and buy-in.
- c) Establish the required partnerships.
- d) Prepare and implement business plan.
- e) Appoint driver, or champion, for the agency.
- f) Implement a work plan and financial systems.
- g) Develop a performance monitoring system for the agency.
- h) Appoint competent staff.
- i) Develop and institute operational procedures.

## SECTION H: THE WAY FORWARD

### 29 IMPLEMENTATION

The Overberg District Municipality sees this SDF as the first step towards the implementation of holistic and integrated regional planning and management throughout the ODM. In this regard, the municipality believes that the SDF will promote the ideals of sustainable development through the strategies and programmes proposed in the document. It is recognised that the SDF is not a final product. However, it presents the opportunity for all I&APs to assist with the preparation of a model development and management framework, which will over time ensure a sustainable future for all the people of the ODM. The municipality recognises that the SDF is not the solution in itself and that its ultimate success will depend on a range of factors, in particular, the following:

#### 29.1 I&AP INVOLVEMENT AND EMPOWERMENT

This SDF addresses the challenge to create *places* where the people of the ODM can live with dignity and pride and to manage these places in a manner, which would ensure long-term environmental sustainability. In this regard, the IDPs, SDFs and SDPs should be an expression of the wishes of the people of the ODM in respect of the **kind of places** they want to live in and the **kind of future** they are aspiring for.

In order to achieve the above, the involvement and co-operation of all I&APs is of fundamental importance, as they are essentially the '*custodians*' of their environment(s). An imperative in this regard is to enable all I&APs to participate meaningfully in the planning and management of the areas where they live. The District Municipality believes that the strategy through which this can be achieved is the implementation of neighbourhood area planning as a supplement to the municipal ward system (refer to Par. 16.1.4.2, Chapter 28.6 and Annexure 3).

Furthermore, the effective implementation of this document depends on an understanding and appreciation of the need for integrated forward planning and integrated environmental management. '*Ignorance and inadequate knowledge*' were identified as fundamental key issues that influence the involvement and co-operation of I&APs. In order to promote an appropriate understanding of the environment as our 'home' the following strategies are proposed:

- a) All SDFs and SDPs prepared for areas within the ODM must recognise the need to develop this understanding.
- b) The Overberg District Municipality and the Category B Municipalities must facilitate the provision of quality spatial data and interpretation to land managers to assist decision-making and adaptive management, and make regional natural resource information and knowledge widely available or accessible.
- c) Implement and sustain education programmes pertaining to the delicate relationships between places (environments) and their inhabitants, focussing on the responsibilities of the inhabitants regarding the protection of the ability of such places to sustain life.
- d) Encourage education institutions (e.g. schools) to incorporate appropriate environmental studies into curricula.
- e) Develop and conduct compulsory environmental courses for all municipal officials that are involved with land-use management and development.

- f) Develop a system of values and increase recognition and understanding of the above. Promote recognition of these values in all decision-making pertaining to land-use and land management.

## 29.2 COLLABORATION AND CO-OPERATION

**A key function of the Overberg District Municipality will be to undertake and sustain a programme to explain the intentions and application of this SDF to all I&APs, and facilitate the implementation of the proposals and recommendations put forward in this document through the SDFs of the various Local Municipalities.**

### 29.2.1 LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES

As stated above, the ODM has adopted bioregional planning and management as a basis for the implementation of this SDF, which implies that...*'government and communities, corporate and individual interests share responsibility for co-ordinating land-use planning and for defining and implementing development options that will ensure that human needs are met in a sustainable way. This necessitates innovative forms of institutional integration and social co-operation, dialogue amongst all interested parties, participatory planning and institutional flexibility'*.

The implementation of the Overberg SDF lies in the responsibility sphere of a number of institutions, from the national level, through to the local level. As stated above, cross-sectoral and cross-institutional co-operation is crucial, given that the identified key issues are of relevance to virtually every government and non-government institution.

A key objective of this SDF is to ensure effective environmental planning and management of the ODM. Environmental legislation underpins the integrated management of an area, with the primary objectives being the **prevention** of environmental degradation and the **rehabilitation** of existing environmental damage. In this regard, inter-institutional co-ordination and integration of environmental management functions is necessary in making and implementing policy, and to achieve integrated and holistic environmental management.

It is the function of the Overberg District Municipality to facilitate the required collaboration and co-ordination between the various Category B Municipalities regarding the planning and management of their areas of jurisdiction in accordance with a standard format, namely the bioregional planning approach, while still allowing each municipality the autonomy to interpret and apply this standard format in a manner that is innovative and incorporates the place-specific characteristics of each municipality. This has been achieved in a manner, which is commendable and exemplary for the entire Western Cape Province. In this regard, the SDF provides a standard framework that should now be refined and implemented through the SDFs of the Category B Municipalities:

- a) A district-wide and rough grain land-use classification (refer to Plan 2 {SPC Plan}).
- b) Broad strategies and implementation guidelines.

It is imperative that each municipality fulfills its obligations and commitments in the above regard and contributes to the well-being of the ODM as a whole.

A primary requirement is that close collaboration be established between the various municipalities in respect of the joint management of the 'areas of co-operation' illustrated by



Plan 1.1 and Plan 1.2. In order to ensure the required collaboration, it is important that the relevant Local Municipalities should build on the strategies put forward in this document

### **29.2.2 STATE DEPARTMENTS**

Government departments are required to comply with the policies and strategies put forward in this SDF and to maintain effective administration of their respective spheres of responsibility. Institutional commitment to achieve effective administration and implementation is imperative. In this regard, reference is made *inter alia* to the allocation of adequate budgets as a primary requirement.

### **29.2.3 NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANISATIONS**

An important requirement is that the actions of NGOs such as STEP, SKEP, CAPE, WCNCB and SANParks pertaining to the conservation of the natural environment, as well as any community programmes, be properly co-ordinated and channelled, or connected, to the IDP process as the statutory vehicle for the implementation of such initiatives. All actions in this regard, are subject to the approval, or endorsement of the relevant municipality and are to be undertaken in close collaboration with those municipalities. In this regard, it is important that NGOs make full use of this document as the framework for the implementation of their strategies and action plans and that such strategies and action plans be implemented in accordance with the bioregional planning and management approach.

### **29.2.4 COMMUNITIES**

The involvement of the people of the ODM is seen as a key requirement for the implementation of the SDF. The communities are *inter alia* required to develop and entrench a set of agreed-upon values and environmental ethics, and to facilitate the proposed implementation of the strategies proposed in this document 'on the ground'.

In order to enable the communities to contribute constructively in this regard, it is imperative that they be empowered appropriately and that the structures be created that would encourage enthusiastic participation. In this regard, it is imperative that urgent attention be given to the implementation of empowerment strategies put forward under Chapter 27, and that neighbourhood area planning and management be implemented through the SDFs of the Local Municipalities (refer to Chapter 28.6).

## **29.3 RESEARCH AND MONITORING**

It is important that this document be periodically updated in accordance with new information, improving technology and changing human and environmental needs. It is therefore important that need-driven research and constant monitoring be undertaken in a coherent manner.

In this regard, the research undertaken by *inter alia* STEP, SKEP, CAPE, DWAF, SANParks and WCNCB is of utmost importance. It is imperative that existing and future research projects be effectively co-ordinated in order to prevent duplication and address the identified research requirements of the ODM.

It is imperative that all new information be entered into the *Spatial Planning Information System* of the District Municipality, which is to be linked with those of the various Local

Municipalities. This will assist with the constant updating of the SDF plans and similarly benefit the various Local Municipalities.

A further key requirement, is that thorough research and/or surveys be undertaken in order to give substance to the principles of critical regionalism that are to provide a framework for any urban and rural development throughout the ODM (refer to Par. 25.2.1 above). This is to be undertaken through the SDFs of the various Local Municipalities and SDPs that may be prepared for specific areas or places.

As stated above, authorities and designers will be required to understand the principles of critical regionalism and play a creative role in facilitating the restoration of the existing human-made environment and the development of high quality places in accordance with these principles. In this regard, it is imperative that the Overberg District Municipality and the various Category B Municipalities show the way by developing institutional capacity to apply the principles of critical regionalism.

---

**EXECUTIVE MAYOR  
OVERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY:**

**DATE**

---

**EXECUTIVE MUNICIPAL MANAGER  
OVERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY:**

**DATE**

## 30 REFERENCES

- Acocks, J.P.H. (1988) Veld Types of South Africa, **Memoirs of the Botanical Survey of South Africa** No. 57 (Third Edition), 1988.
- Alexander, D. (1990). **Bioregionalism: Science or Sensibility? Environmental Ethics** 12(2) 161-173.
- Alexander, Christopher *et al* (1982) **'A Pattern Language'**. Oxford University Press.
- Atkinson, A. (1992) **The urban bioregion as sustainable development paradigm.** Third World Planning Review, Vol. 14, No. 4, pp 327 - 354.
- Batisse, M. (1982) **The Biosphere Reserve: A Tool for Environmental Management. Environmental Conservation** 9(2): 101-111
- Bently, I., Alcock, A., Murrain, P., Mc Glynn, S. & Smith, G. (1985) **Responsive Environments. A Manual for Designers.** Butterworth Architecture. Oxford.
- Berg, P. (2002). **Bioregionalism (a definition).**  
<http://www.diggers.org/freecitynews/disc1/00000017.thml>
- Boucher, C. (1987) **A Phytosociological Study of the transects through the Western Cape Coastal Foreland, South Africa.** Ph.D Thesis Univ. of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch.
- Boucher, C. and Le Roux, A. (1993) **Dry Coastal Ecosystems of South Africa.** In: E. van der Maarel (eds.). Ecosystems of the World, 2B: Dry Coastal Ecosystems, Africa, America, Asia and Oceania. Elsevier, Amsterdam.
- Branch, M. and Branch, G. (1988). **The Living Shores of Southern Africa.** C. Struik Publishers, Cape Town.
- Bridgeman, D H M. (1992) **The Tourist Industry in the Western Cape.** Wesgro. Cape Town
- Britz, P. (1997). **Abalone Farming Boom.** SA Commercial Marine Magazine. Vol. 6 (1).
- Brown, A.C. and McLachlan, A. (1990). **Ecology of Sandy Shores.** Elsevier Science Publishers.
- Brouwer, S.L. *et al.* (1997) **A survey of the South African Shore-Angling Fishery.** *S.Afr.J.mar.* 18:165-178
- Burgers, C. J. (1993) **The cost effectiveness of mountain catchment Conservation in the Fynbos Biome.** Cape Nature Conservation. Cape Town

- Burgers, C.J. (1992) **The significance of mountain catchment protection and Management for ensuring the water supply of the Greater Cape Town Region: implications for the Western Cape Systems Analysis (WCSA).** Report to the Environmental Committee of the WSCA. Cape Nature Conservation Stellenbosch.
- Cape Agulhas Municipality (2002). **Cape Agulhas Integrated Development Plan.**
- Cape Nature Conservation. (1997) **A conservation overview of the Coastline of the Western Cape Province (Draft).**
- Cape Overberg Tourism Association. (1995) **The Overberg Explorer:** A guide for environment-orientated travel in Cape Overberg.
- Capenhurst, J. (1994) **Community Tourism, in Les Haywood (Ed.): Community Leisure and Recreation.** Oxford.
- Carter W. (1982) **'Nature Conservation, Wilderness, and Interpretation'** in Martin 164-8.
- Central Statistical Service. (1991) **Population Census 1991:** Economic Sector by Development Region, Statistical Region and District. Report No. 03-01-09(1991). Central Statistical Service. Pretoria.
- Chisholm, M. (1968) **Rural Settlement and Land Use.** Hutchinson University Library. London.
- Council for the Environment. (August, 1991) **A Policy for Coastal Zone Management in the Republic of South Africa. Part 2: Guidelines for Coastal Land-Use.**
- CSIR (1988). **Nearshore Physical Processes in a Nutshell.** CSIR Report EMA/T 8803.
- CSIR (1989). **Estuaries of the Cape: Part II: Synopsis of Available Information on Individual Systems.** Report No. 40: Klein. CSIR Research Report 439.
- CSIR (1996). **Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA): A Premier.** Issued by Division of Water, Environment and Forestry Technology, Stellenbosch.
- CSIR. (1993) **The Mapping and Conservation Importance Rating of the Cape Coastal Vegetation as an Aid to Development Planning.** Cape West Coast.
- DAG (1994). **A Statistical Guide to the Western Cape Province.** A DAG Resource Document.

- Deacon, J. (1993) **Management Guidelines for Rock Art Sites in Nature Conservation Areas and Forestry Reserves in the Western Cape.** Department of Archaeology University of Stellenbosch
- Dennis Moss Partnership Inc. (1995) **Application for nomination of Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve. Final Report to UNESCO.**
- Dennis Moss Partnership Inc. (1995) **Sustainable Development: Some International Perspectives and Applications: West Coast Sub-Region.**
- Dennis Moss Partnership Inc. (2000) **Coastal Zone Policy for the Western Cape.**
- Dennis Moss Partnership Inc. (2000) **West Coast District Spatial Plan: Volume 1 – Planning Context and Proposals (Consultative Draft).**
- Dennis Moss Partnership Inc. (2000) **West Coast District Spatial Plan: Volume – Strategies, Programmes and Projects (Consultative Draft).**
- Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (1995). **Towards a Coastal Zone Management Policy for South Africa:** Reference Document (first draft) unpublished report for internal use only.
- Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (1996). **National Register of Protected Areas in South Africa.** Pretoria.
- Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (1998). **Coastal Policy Green Paper: Towards Sustainable Coastal Development in South Africa.**
- Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (1999). **Draft White Paper for Sustainable Development in South Africa.**
- Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (2001/2002). **A Bioregional Approach to South Africa's Protected Areas**
- Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (2002). **Proposed First Edition: National Water Resource Strategy.**
- Development Bank of Southern African (1997). **West Coast Investment Initiative: Appraisal Document.**
- Duncan Heard Environmental Consultants (2003). **A Broad, Preliminary Strategic Environmental Assessment for the Overberg District Municipal Area.**

- Environmentek, CSIR (2001). **South African Estuaries: Catchment Land-cover. National Summary Report.** Prepared for the Directorate Environmental Information & Statistics, Department of Environmental Affairs & Tourism.
- Fraser, M. and McMahon, L. (1994). **Between Two Shores: Flora and Fauna of the Cape of Good Hope.** Singapore National Printers, Singapore.
- Fuggle, R.F. and Rabie, M.A. (1992) **Environmental Management in South Africa.** Juta & Co, Ltd, Cape Town.
- Glavovic, P.D. (1995) **Wilderness and the Law: A rationale for a new legal praxis for the protection of wilderness in South Africa in virtue of its instrumental, intrinsic and biocentric value: A conceptual and comparative commentary.** Law Books Press, Durban, Natal.
- Glazewski, J. (2000). **Environmental Law in South Africa.** Butterworth Publishers.
- Hall, A.V. & Veldhuis, H.A. (1985) **South African Red Data Book: Plants – Fynbos and Karoo Biomes.** South African National Scientific Programs Report No. 117.
- Harwell, H.J. (1983) **A national perspective on natural areas programmes: Major problems and suggested solutions.** Transactions of the 48<sup>th</sup> North American Wildlife Conference.
- Heidegger, M. (1975) **Poetry, Languages, Thought.** Harper & Row Publishers, Inc.
- Heijnis et al. (1997) **Identification of Priority Areas for a Proposed Biosphere Reserve in the Coastal Lowlands of the Western Cape.** Institute for Plant Conservation, University of Cape Town.
- Heydorn, A.E.F. and Tinley, K.L. (1980) **Estuaries of the Cape. Synopsis of the Cape Coast: Natural Features, Dynamics & Utilization.** CSIR Research Report 380, Stellenbosch.
- Higgins, S.I. and Cowling, R.M. (1997). **The Ecological Economics of Fynbos Ecosystems.** Veld and Flora, Vol. 83 (1), pp 4-5.
- Hilton-Taylor, C. (1996) **Red Data List of Southern African plants.** Strelitzia 4.
- Hopewell, I. (1996) **Corporate Responsibility: Meeting your Environmental Obligations.** EARTHYEAR 13th Ed.
- Huntley, B.J. (Ed) (1998) **Biotic Diversity in Southern Africa. Concepts and Conservation.** Cape Town
- International Institute of Sustainable Development. (1995) **What is sustainable development? Definitions, Declarations, Principles, Discussion Forum, Measurement and Indicators**

- IUCN/UNEP/WWF. (1991) **Caring for the Earth. A Strategy for Sustainable Living.** Gland. Switzerland.
- Jeffery, D.J. (1997). Conservation Overview of the Coastline of the Western Cape Province. Prepared for Cape Nature Conservation.
- Jensen, R. (1992). **An Outline of the Western Cape Agricultural Sector.** Wesgro. Cape Town.
- Kaplan, J (1993). **The State of Archaeological Information in the Coastal Zone from the Orange River to Ponta do Oura.** Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism.
- Kelbaugh, D. (1997). **Common Place. Toward Neighborhood and Regional Design.** University of Washington Press. Seattle and London.
- Klein, R.G. (1974). **Environment and subsistence of prehistoric man in the Southern Cape Province, South Africa,** *Worlds Archaeol.* 5(3):249-284
- Kok, P. & Gelderblom, D. (1995) **Urbanisation: South Africa's Challenge. Volume 1: Dynamics.** HSRC Publishers. Pretoria.
- Laidler, M. (2002) **Bioregionalism.** Triple Bottom Line + One. <http://www.projects.eu.rmit.edu.au/gs/Economic/eco11.html>
- Ledger, J. (1996) **POPULATION: Our highest environmental priority.** EARTHYEAR, 13<sup>th</sup> ed.
- Leopold A. (1989) **A Sand County Almanac - And Sketches Here and There,** Oxford, Oxford University Press: 1989 ed.
- Low, A.B. & Jones, F.E. (eds). (1995) **The sustainable use and management of renosterveld remnants in the Cape Floristic Region.** FFC Report 95/4. Kirstenbosch.
- Low, A.B. & Rebelo, A.G. (eds). (1996). **Vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland.** Dept. Environmental Affairs and Tourism, Pretoria.
- Lucas R.C. (1989) **A Look at Wilderness Use and Users in Transition,** 29 *Natural Resources Journal* 41
- Lynch, K (1960) **The Image of the City.** MIT Press Oxford Massachusetts.
- Lynch, K (1988) **The Theory of Good City Form.** MIT Press Oxford Massachusetts.
- Mebratu, D. (1998) **Sustainability and sustainable development: Historical and conceptual overview.** *Environmental impact and assessment review,* 18:493-500.

- Midgley, D.C., Pitman, W.V., and Middleton, B.J. (1994) **Surface Water Resources of South Africa, 1990, Volume IV Appendices.** Water Research Commission Report No. 298/4.2/94
- Miller, K. (1996) **Balancing the Scales: Guidelines for Increasing Biodiversity's Chances Through Bioregional Management.** World Resources Institute. Washington.
- MLH Architects and Planners **Southern Overberg Sub-Regional Structure Plan**
- Moll, E.J. & Bossi, L. (1984) **Assessment of the extent of the natural vegetation of the Fynbos Biome of South Africa.** S. Afr. J. Sci. 80: 355-358.
- Moss, D. (1996) **An analysis of Bioregional Planning and its application to the Cape Metropolitan Spatial Development Framework.** University of Stellenbosch.
- Moughtin, Cliff (1997) **Urban Design – Green Dimensions.** Architectural Press, Oxford.
- Nash R., (1982) **Wilderness and the American Mind** Hew Haven and London, Yale University Press, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed.
- Norberg-Schulz, Christian (1984) **'Genius Loci, Towards a Phenomenology of Architecture'** Rizzoli International Publications, Inc.
- Norberg-Schulz, Christian (1993). **The Concept of Dwelling.** Rizzoli International Publications, Inc.
- Overberg Distrikraad. (2000) **Geïntegreerde Ontwikkelingsplan**
- Overberg District Municipality. (2001) **Interim Integrated Development Plan**
- Overberg District Municipality. (2002) **Overberg Integrated Development Plan**
- Payne, A. (2000) **Marine fisheries management in South Africa.** In *Fishing Industry News, Southern Africa*, Exbury Publications.
- Penn, N. (1986) **Pastoralists and pastoralism in the northern Cape frontier zone during the eighteenth century.** South African Archaeological Society Goodwin Series 5:62 - 68.
- PGWC, DEADP. (2003) **Draft Spatial Development Framework Manual.**
- Punter, J. & Carmona, M. (1997) **The Design Dimension of Planning: Theory and Best Practice for Design Policy.** Van Nostrand Reinhold.



- Rogers, J. (1982) **Lithostratigraphy of the Cenozoic Sediments between Cape Town and Elands Bay.** Palaeo-ecology of Africa, Vol. 15.
- Ritchardson, D. (2001) **Historic Sites of South Africa.** Struik
- Rolston, H. (1994). **Conserving natural value: Perspectives in biological diversity series.** New York, Columbia University Press.
- SACS (1980). South African Committee for Stratigraphy. Stratigraphy of South Africa, Part 1. Handbook of the Geological Survey.
- SATOUR Fabricus, M., Heath, E. (1994). A Reconstruction and Development Strategy for the Tourism Industry for the Period 1994 – 1999.
- Schaefer, P. and A. (1993) **Lagoon: A Companion to the West Coast National Park.** Yoshi, Cape Town.
- Schmithusen, J. (1964) **Was ist eine Landschaft.** In: Erdkundliches Wissen H.9.
- Sharp, Thomas. (1946) **'The Anatomy of the Village'**, Penguin Books, Harmondsworth, Middlesex.
- Sinclair, S.A., Lane S.B. & Grindley, J.R. (1986) **Estuaries of the Cape: Part II: Synopsis of available information on individual systems.** Report No.32 Verlorenvlei (CW 13).
- Skead, C.J. (1989) **Historical mammal incidence in the Cape Province. Volume 1. The Western and Northern Cape.** Sixth impression. Cape Town: Provincial Administration of the Cape of Good Hope.
- Smyth A.J. And Dumanski. J. (1993) **FESLM: An international framework for evaluating sustainable land management.** World Soil Resources Reports. Land and Water Development Division, Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations
- Sale, K. (1986). **The new ecology movement.** Fourth World Review Number 15. <http://www.cesc.net/radicalconsultation/kirkpatricksale/ks1.html>
- Sauer, W.H.H, *et al.* (1997) **An evaluation of attitudes and responses to monitoring and management measures for the South African boat-based linefishery.** *S.Afr.J.mar.Sci* 18. 147-163
- Shapiro, E. (1993). **Understanding Community: Socio-Economic Perspective: Bioregionalism.** <http://www.adm.uwaterloo/infowast/watgreen/projects/library/880/final3.html>
- Tilley, Cristopher. (1994) **A phenomenology of landscape. Places, Paths and Monuments.** Berg Publishers, Oxford.
- Tinley, K.L. (1985). Coastal Dunes of South Africa. South African National Scientific Programmes, Report No. 109.

- Trancik, Roger (1986) **Finding Lost Space.** Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York.
- Turpie, J.K. & Siegfried, R. (1996) **'The Conservation-Economic Imperative: Securing future protected areas in South Africa'**. Africa Environment and Wildlife, Vol.4, No. 3.
- UNCED. (1992) **United Nations Conference on Environment and Development: Commission on Sustainable Development, Agenda 21.** Rio de Janeiro Summit.
- UNESCO. (1987) **A Practical Guide to MAB: What is MAB? How does it work? How does one become involved? Who is responsible for what?**
- UNESCO. (1995) **Seville Strategy on Biosphere Reserves.** UNESCO, Paris.
- Van der Elst, R.P. (1989) **Marine recreational angling in South Africa.** *In Oceans of Life off Southern Africa* (Payne, A.I.L. and Crawford, J.M, eds.), Vlaeberg, Cape Town.
- Van der Merwe, S.W. (1995) **Riglyne vir bestuur van luiperdbestuurgebiede. Interne Verslag no 16.** Kaaplandse Natuurbewaring.
- Van Wyk, J. (1999). **Planning Laws: Principles and Procedures of Land-Use Management.** Juta & Co.
- Wagner, H.R. (1983) **Phenomenology of Consciousness and the Sociology of the Lofe-world: An Introductory Study.** The University of Alberta Press, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada.
- Walker, T. (1997). **Crayfish Brawl: Redtide Returns.** SA Commercial Marine Magazine, Vol. 6 (2), 2-4.
- Water Research Commission (1994). **Surface Water Resources of South Africa.** Book of Maps, Volume IV (Western Cape). WRC Report No. 298/4.2/94.
- Wesgro (1992). **South Africa's Leading Edge? A Guide to the Western Cape Economy.**
- Wesgro (2000). **Background Report on the Craft Industry in the Western Cape.**
- Western Cape Provincial Development Council (1998). **Shaping the Cape. Towards a consensus-based provincial growth and development strategy: a development review.** FA Print.
- WRI, IUCN and UNEP (1992). **Global Biodiversity Strategy: Guidelines for Action to Save, Study and Use Earth's Biotic Wealth Sustainably and Equitably.** Washington.